

**Development and Efficacy Assessment of Equine Source Hyper-Immune Plasma against  
*Bacillus anthracis***

by

James Marcus Caldwell

A dissertation submitted to the Graduate Faculty of  
Auburn University  
in partial fulfillment of the  
requirements for the Degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy

Auburn, Alabama  
August 1, 2015

Keywords: horse, hyper immune plasma, *Bacillus anthracis*, enzyme-linked immunosorbent  
assay, toxin neutralization assay, experimental mouse *B. anthracis* challenge

Copyright 2015 by James Marcus Caldwell

Approved by  
Kenny Brock, Chair, Associate Dean of Biomedical Affairs  
Paul Walz, Professor of Pathobiology  
Sue Duran, Professor of Clinical Sciences

## Abstract

The objective of the studies described here was to develop an equine source immune plasma against *Bacillus anthracis* and test its efficacy in two *in vitro* applications; as well as determine its capacity for passive protection in an infection model in mice. Initially, a safe and reliable immunization protocol for producing equine source hyper-immune plasma against *B. anthracis* was developed. Six Percheron horses were hyper-immunized with either the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vaccine, recombinant protective antigen (rPA) homogenized with Freund's incomplete adjuvant, or a combination of both vaccines. Multiple routes of immunization, dose (antigen mass) and immunizing antigens were explored for safety. A modified automated plasmapheresis process was then employed for the collection of plasma at a maximum target dose of up to 22 ml of plasma/kg of donor bodyweight to establish the proof-of-concept that large volumes of plasma could be safely collected from horses for large scale production of immune plasma. All three immunization protocols were found to be safe and repeatable in horses and three pheresis events were performed with the total collection of 168.36 L of plasma and a mean collection volume of 18.71 L ( $\pm$  0.302 L) for each event.

Once the hyper-immune plasma had been successfully harvested, two *in vitro* potency tests, an indirect enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) were developed to determine the titer of anti-PA antibodies and a toxin neutralization assay to determine the titer of protective antibodies against lethal toxin. In addition, the performance characteristics of the assay were validated in concordance with standards set forth by the International Conference on Harmonics (ICH) and the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) for analytical procedures.

A working range for this assay was established (73-1581 EU/ml) on the bases of the following parameters: linearity (25 and 1,662 EU/ml,  $R^2 = 0.999$ ,  $p < 0.001$ ), accuracy (94.8 - 105.4 %, recovery within the range of 25 and 1,662 EU/ml), precision ( $\leq 17.6\%$ CV, repeatability;  $\leq 15.7$  and  $\leq 13.1$  % CV, intermediate precision per day and per analyst, respectively), limit of detection (2.25 EU/ml) and limit of quantitation (25 EU/ml). The assay was also demonstrated to be specific for the evaluation of anti-PA antibodies. Based on these performance characteristics it was determined that this assay is adequate for use in *B. anthracis* immunogenicity testing in horses.

Antibody titers against PA were found to be as high as 1:512,000 in some horses. The geometric mean titers for horses hyper-immunized with spore vaccine alone, for horses hyper-immunized with the spore vaccine then hyper-immunized with rPA, for horses hyper-immunized with the spore vaccine then hyper-immunized with twice the volume of spore vaccine, and for horses hyper-immunized with rPA alone was 1:43,031 (SEM $\pm$ 3995, CI 95% 1:35,675 – 1:51,906), 1:213,027 (SEM $\pm$ 32,252, CI 95% 1:152,849 – 1:296,897), 1:83,912 (SEM $\pm$ 16,818, CI 95% 1:54,046 – 1:129,971) and 1:34,912 (SEM $\pm$ 13,961, CI 95% 1:15,035 – 1:81,066), respectively.

Neutralizing antibodies were assessed using mouse macrophage J774A.1 cells in an LF-induced cytotoxicity toxin neutralization assay. Several horses developed neutralizing titers as high 1:1,024. The geometric mean neutralizing titers for horses immunized with the Sterne strain spore vaccine alone, for horses immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with rPA, for horses immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with twice the volume of spore vaccine, and for horses immunized with rPA alone was 1: 130 (SEM $\pm$ 2.26, CI 95% 1:126 –

1:135), 1: 964 (SEM±56, CI 95% 1:849 – 1:1,094), 1: 683 (SEM ± 171, CI 95% 1:408 – 1:1,143) and 1:478 (SEM ± 5.5, CI 95% 1:9.5 – 1:68), respectively. Overall, this demonstrates that plasma derived from horses immunized against *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and rPA provides strong *in vitro* correlates of protection.

As a final assessment of the efficacy, hyper-immune plasma and affinity purified immunoglobulins harvested from horses hyper-immunized with *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vaccine was evaluated in the treatment of A/J strain mice intranasal (IN) and subcutaneous (SC) challenge with *B. anthracis* Sterne strain. The treatment of native (un-concentrated) hyper-immune plasma at time 0 hour and 24 hour post-infection following both an IN and SC challenge had no effect on rate of survival to the end of the study period, but did significantly increase mean time to death ( $p < 0.0001$ ) compared to mice treated with *naïve* equine plasma. Mice treated with concentrated immunoglobulins at both time points following IN and SC challenge demonstrated significantly different survival rates ( $p < 0.001$ ) compared to mice treated with *naïve* plasma. *B. anthracis* colony forming units/gram of lung, liver and spleen tissue were also assessed and were not significantly different in mice treated with hyper-immune plasma but were reduced by 4 fold and completely cleared in some cases after treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins ( $p < 0.0001$ ).

## Acknowledgments

There are many individuals that I am compelled to acknowledge for their assistance along the way. Specifically I would like to name the members of my committee; Dr. Kenny Brock, Dr. Paul Walz, and Dr. Sue Duran. Each of them have held me to a high standard of integrity, work ethic and independence. I want to thank Dr. Brock for providing me the opportunity of this doctoral program. When I decided to take on this opportunity I did so with the intent of making a larger impact on the cattle industry than I could have as a general practicing veterinarian and even at this early stage of my career his leadership has opened many doors which is allowing me to do that. I would like to thank Dr. Walz for his direction during my residency training. I daily recognize his influence infused in many of the aspects of my clinical skills, critical thinking and teaching style and am grateful for the chance to learn from him. I also sincerely appreciate Dr. Duran's compassionate advice and the doses of optimism she injected along the way. A special thanks to my food animal mentors and resident mates at Auburn University. In my opinion there is no better group of individuals. United by the common goal of providing excellent food animal medicine and veterinary education, I have gained tremendously from my association with them. Finally, I'd like to thank my wife Elizabeth. Loved ones of graduate students endure many beanie weenie meals, long hours alone, and overly enthusiastic spouses attempting to communicate esoteric results. Thank you for walking with me in this and allowing me to chase my dreams, giving me two beautiful little girls and being my best friend.

## Table of Contents

Abstract.....	ii
Acknowledgments.....	v
List of Tables .....	vii
List of Illustrations.....	ix
List of Abbreviations .....	xi
Chapter 1 .....	1
Literature Review	
Chapter 2 .....	69
The production of hyper immune plasma from horses serially immunized with a <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> Sterne strain spore vaccine and recombinant protective antigen	
Chapter 3 .....	82
Validation of an anti-protective antigen ELISA for the evaluation immune plasma derived from horses immunized against <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> Sterne strain	
Chapter 4.....	105
Assessment of protective antigen and toxin neutralizing antibody titers in hyper-immune plasma derived from horses immunized against <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> Sterne strain	
Chapter 5.....	121
Passive protection against anthrax in mice with plasma derived from horses hyper-immunized against <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> Sterne strain	
Chapter 6.....	156
Discussion	
References .....	170

## List of Tables

<b>Table 2.1</b> Immunization protocol for individual horses.....	79
<b>Table 2.2</b> Immunization protocol for alternative dosing of Sterne strain spore vaccine in individual horses .....	80
<b>Table 2.3</b> Immunization protocol for previously immunized horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant protective antigen.....	80
<b>Table 2.4</b> Immunization protocol for naïve horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant protective antigen.....	81
<b>Table 2.5</b> Mean collection volumes for three plasmapheresis events .....	81
<b>Table 3.1a</b> Specificity: Free rPA successfully binds with anti-PA antibodies and reduces the interaction of the antibodies with bound rPA .....	95
<b>Table 3.1b</b> Specificity: Blocking a microtiter plate with a milk based blocking agent does not significantly alter the OD values obtained .....	96
<b>Table 3.1c</b> Specificity: REF plasma specifically binds to rPA coated wells but does not bind ovalbumin coated wells.....	96
<b>Table 3.2a</b> Limit of Detection .....	97
<b>Table 3.2b</b> Interpolated Limit of Detection .....	98
<b>Table 3.3a</b> Accuracy .....	99
<b>Table 3.3b</b> Accuracy .....	99
<b>Table 3.4</b> Linearity .....	100
<b>Table 3.5</b> Precision.....	102
<b>Table 3.6</b> Limit of Quantitation.....	103
<b>Table 3.7</b> Acceptance Criteria and Characteristics of the anti-PA Equine ELISA .....	104
<b>Table 4.1</b> Immunization protocol for individual horses.....	120

<b>Table 4.2</b> Immunization protocol for alternative dosing of Sterne strain spore vaccine in individual horses .....	121
<b>Table 4.3</b> Immunization protocol for previously immunized horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant protective antigen.....	121
<b>Table 4.4</b> Immunization protocol for naïve horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant protective antigen.....	122
<b>Table 4.5</b> Percentage cell lysis induced over varying concentrations of lethal factor (LF).....	126
<b>Table 5.1</b> Allocation of mice into treatment groups for IN challenge .....	149
<b>Table 5.2</b> Allocation of mice into treatment groups for SC challenge.....	150
<b>Table 5.3</b> Clinical Behavior Ethogram.....	151
<b>Table 5.4</b> Probit analysis for IN LD <sub>50</sub> determination .....	152
<b>Table 5.5</b> Probit analysis for SC LD <sub>50</sub> determination .....	153
<b>Table 5.6</b> Cumulative survival following IN challenge .....	154
<b>Table 5.7</b> Mean time to death (TTD) following IN challenge .....	155
<b>Table 5.8</b> Cumulative survival following SC challenge .....	156
<b>Table 5.9</b> Mean time to death (TTD) following SC challenge.....	157
<b>Table 5.10</b> Mean colony forming units (CFUs)/ gram of tissue .....	162



List of Illustrations

**Figure 1.1** Global Prevalence of Anthrax ..... 8

**Figure 3.1** Titration Curve ..... 98

**Figure 3.2** Linearity ..... 101

**Figure 4.1** Reciprocal end point titers for horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne strain 34F2 spore vaccine..... 123

**Figure 4.2** Geometric mean titers in four horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne strain 34F2 vaccine ..... 124

**Figure 4.3** Geometric mean titers for horses immunized with spore vaccine and rPA, 2.0 ml spore vaccine, or rPA alone ..... 125

**Figure 4.4** Antibody mediated neutralization of LF-induced lysis is influenced by the concentration of LF in the lethal toxin preparation ..... 127

**Figure 4.5** Rescue of lethal toxin lysis displays a defined time limit from toxin exposure ..... 128

**Figure 4.6** Reciprocal endpoint neutralizing titers for horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne strain 34F2 vaccine ..... 129

**Figure 4.7** Geometric mean neutralizing titers for horses immunized with spore vaccine and rPA, 2.0 mls spore vaccine, or rPA alone ..... 130

**Figure 5.1** Kaplan Meier survival curve following IN challenge and treatment with hyper-immune plasma ..... 158

**Figure 5.2** Kaplan Meier survival curve following SC challenge and treatment with hyper-immune plasma ..... 159

**Figure 5.3** Kaplan Meier survival curve following IN challenge and treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins ..... 160

**Figure 5.4** Kaplan Meier survival curve following SC challenge and treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins ..... 161

**Figure 5.5** CFU/gram of lung tissue from mice following IN challenge ..... 163

**Figure 5.6** CFU/gram of lung tissue from mice following SC challenge ..... 164  
**Figure 5.7** CFU/gram of liver tissue from mice following SC challenge ..... 165

## List of Abbreviations

PA	Protective Antigen	
LF	Lethal Factor	
EF	Edema Factor	
LD <sub>50</sub>	Lethal Dose (50%)	
mAb	Monoclonal Antibody	
AVA	Anthrax Vaccine Adsorbed	
rPA	Recombinant Protective Antigen	
EU	Experimental Unit	
%CV	Coefficient of Variation	
OD	Optic Density	
ELISA	Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay	SEM
		Standard Error of the Mean
PCR	Polymerase Chain Reaction	

1 **Chapter 1:**

2 **Literature Review**

3 **The History of Anthrax**

4 Anthrax as a disease has been known since antiquity. Perhaps the first recorded  
5 description of anthrax was provided by Moses detailing the fifth and sixth plagues (the death of  
6 livestock and the plague of boils) brought forth on Egypt. Moses declares in ninth chapter of the  
7 Book of Exodus,

8 “The hand of the Lord will fall with a very severe pestilence (some translations use  
9 *murrain*) on your livestock in the fields, on horses, asses, camels, herds and on the  
10 flocks.” (Exodus 9:3, New American Standard Bible)

11 In order to deliver this plague Moses was commanded to lift a handful of dust toward the sky;

12 “It will become a fine dust over all the land of Egypt and will become boils breaking out  
13 with sores on man and beast” (Exodus 9:9, New American Standard Bible)

14 Other historians and poets have described plagues that may also be interpreted as symbolic of  
15 anthrax in humans and animals. The Roman poet Virgil presented a description of a disease  
16 similar to anthrax in his third *Georgic*<sup>1</sup>;

17 “A terrible plague once sprang up there and ranged on through the warmer part of  
18 the autumn, not only destroying one flock of sheep after another, but killing animals of  
19 all kinds....The steaming ox falls before the heavy plow. Blood mixed with froth issues  
20 from his mouth as he groans his last. ....The pelts of diseased animals were useless, and  
21 neither water nor fire could cleanse the taint from their flesh. The sheep men could not  
22 shear the fleece which was riddled with disease and corruption, nor did they dare even to

23 touch the rotting strands. If anyone wore garments made from tainted wool, his limbs  
24 were soon attacked by inflamed papules and a foul exudate.”

25 The Greek physician Hippocrates was the first to name the disease by coining the term  
26 “*anthracites*” (later corrupted to anthrax) a Greek word which translates “coal-like” to describe  
27 the black eschars that develop with cutaneous anthrax.<sup>2</sup>

28 Anthrax was an important cause of death for humans and animals throughout the world  
29 until the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Major epizootics were recorded through the Middle Ages in  
30 early veterinary texts such as the “Hippiatrica”<sup>3</sup> and “The medicine of quadrupeds”<sup>4</sup>. These  
31 records relate massive losses of domestic livestock in Europe. In France during the 18<sup>th</sup> century  
32 an anthrax outbreak is thought to have decimated half of the sheep population. Similar accounts  
33 can be found in Hindu and Chinese texts of the time.<sup>5</sup>

34 The modern history of anthrax began in 1790 when Chabert provided the first clear  
35 clinical description of the disease in animals.<sup>5</sup> In 1863, Pierre Rayer and Casmir-Joseph Davaine  
36 two French scientists in the nascent study of microbiology and parasitology consistently  
37 observed “filiform bodies about twice the length of blood corpuscles” in the blood of infected  
38 sheep, yet not in healthy sheep.<sup>5</sup> This led them to conclude that these “bodies” were the etiologic  
39 agent of anthrax and therefore they became the first to associate any disease with a specific  
40 microorganism.

41 Robert Koch in 1876 would further verify these observations through culturing these  
42 bacilli from the blood of infected animals on simple blood based agar.<sup>6</sup> He then observed that  
43 when injected into naïve animals the disease could be reproduced and the bacilli could be re-  
44 isolated. Thus *B. anthracis* served as the model for Koch’s famous postulates. Koch’s postulates

45 are a series of steps that could ostensibly assign an etiologic relationship between an organism  
46 and a clinical disease. In short, the organism must first be isolated in pure culture from an animal  
47 or individual displaying symptoms characteristic of a particular disease, then upon infecting a  
48 new and naïve individual with the isolated pathogen the exact disease process is recreated.  
49 Finally, to fulfil the postulates the same infecting organism must be re-isolate from the new  
50 patient in pure culture. Though no known to be an imperfect model, at the time these guidelines  
51 shaped the formation of the germ theory.

52           In 1881, Louis Pasteur was the first individual to use a live attenuated vaccine when he  
53 used his heat attenuated strain of *B. anthracis* to vaccinate a small group of sheep in a village  
54 outside of Paris.<sup>2</sup> When these sheep were later challenged with virulent *B. anthracis* all  
55 immunized sheep survived.

56           The incidence of anthrax in humans decreased significantly during the 20<sup>th</sup> century  
57 dropping from an estimated occurrence of 20,000-100,000 cases annually in the first half of the  
58 century to less than 2000 in the second half.<sup>5</sup> The majority of these later cases were identified in  
59 mill and textile workers. As result of this industrial correlation anthrax became known as  
60 “wool sorter’s disease” in England. Inhalational anthrax during this time period, as is the case  
61 today, had a much lower incidence than the cutaneous form. In a review of inhalational anthrax  
62 published in 1980 Phillip Brachman of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported  
63 that only 18 cases of inhalational anthrax were reported in the United States from 1900 to the  
64 year of publication. This led him to conclude that anthrax in humans was “now primarily a  
65 disease of historical interest”.<sup>7</sup>

66

67 **Anthrax as a Bioweapon**

68           The first confirmed allegations of the use of *B. anthracis* as a biological weapon were  
69 made against Germany in World War I. German agents were accused of infecting livestock in  
70 Budapest in 1916 and France in 1917. Carus describes an account of German agents infiltrating  
71 the horse pens in Manhattan’s Van Courtland Park as early as 1915 in an attempt to inject the  
72 animals with bottles of liquefied *B. anthracis* spores. Following World War I in recognition of  
73 the dangerous nature of these weapons the Geneva Protocol of 1925 specifically prohibited “the  
74 use of bacteriological methods of warfare”.<sup>8,2,9</sup>

75           Interest in anthrax as a bioweapon resurfaced during the Sino-Japanese War in 1937  
76 when a radical nationalist Japanese military officer and medical researcher named Dr. Shiro Ishii  
77 established a complex outside the Manchurian city of Harbin.<sup>2</sup> Dr. Ishii’s scientists primarily  
78 focused on developing ways to grow and disseminate *B. anthracis* spores. Their attempts  
79 included producing a prototype porcelain bomb and candy laced with *B. anthracis* spores.  
80 Prisoners of war and Chinese women and children were used as subjects in these experiments.<sup>8</sup>  
81 In the summer of 1942 the British began a series of anthrax-bomb tests on the island of Gruinard,  
82 an isolated island off the coast of Scotland.<sup>8</sup> Bombs carrying spores were exploded in attempts to  
83 infect and kill sheep tethered downwind from the explosions. Because of the success of these  
84 tests and others Churchill ordered the production of 500,000 anthrax bombs. There is no record  
85 however, of any direct biological attacks ever carried out against Great Britain’s enemies.

86           The United States also began developing a biological weapons program in 1942 at the  
87 site that would come later to be known as Fort Detrick in Fredrick, Maryland. The main effort at  
88 Fort Detrick focused on the large-scale production of *B. anthracis* and the development of

89 delivery systems including spray tanks, warheads and cluster munitions.<sup>9</sup> At its peak in the late  
90 1950's the United States biological weapons program extended to three sites; Fort Detrick,  
91 Maryland, Fort Terry, Plum Island, and Pine Bluff, Arkansas. Richard Nixon in his "Statement  
92 on Chemical and Biological Defense Policies and Programs" in 1971 announced the end of the  
93 United States offensive biological weapons program and a refocus of the effort into biological  
94 weapons defense. This step led to the Biological Weapons Convention and an international treaty  
95 in 1972 outlawing the use of biological weapons.

96         The Soviet Union escalated the development of their biological weapons program during  
97 the Cold War and despite signing the Biological Weapons Convention Treaty continued to  
98 covertly expanded several agents.<sup>10</sup> Extensive weapons research was carried out by several  
99 government ministries under the oversight of the larger umbrella Biological Substance  
100 Preparation Program or *Biopreparat*. In addition to *B. anthracis*, *Biopreparat* research also  
101 focused on VEE, *Brucella suis*, small pox (*Variola major*), *Yersenia pestis*, and Marburg virus.<sup>10</sup>  
102 *B. anthracis* was the vanguard of the *Biopreparat* program. Research and development of *B.*  
103 *anthracis* emphasized the optimization of lethality and the development of antibiotic resistance.  
104 Enormous stockpiles of *B. anthracis* spores were assembled. Facilities were constructed  
105 exclusively for the purpose of rapidly increasing production following attack or onset of NATO  
106 aggression.<sup>10, 11</sup> Evidence of continued covert weapons manufacturing was revealed on April 2,  
107 1979 when an accidental release of *B. anthracis* spores from a biological weapons manufacturing  
108 facility into the town of Sverdlosk (now Ekaterinaberg, Russia) and the surrounding area  
109 resulted in the largest recorded outbreak of human inhalational anthrax.<sup>12</sup> Aerosolized *B.*  
110 *anthracis* spores were released into the atmosphere from the plant when a clogged air filter was



111 removed and not replaced between shifts of janitorial staff. Winds carried the spores through six  
112 small villages resulting in the exposure of over 16,000 people, 96 confirmed cases of anthrax and  
113 the death of 66.<sup>12</sup>

114 In the early 1990's following the fall of the USSR several high ranking *Biopreparat*  
115 officials defected to the United States. One of the defectors was Ken Albiek a physician,  
116 microbiologist and First Deputy Director of *Biopreparat*.<sup>11</sup> Alibek provided evidence that large  
117 stocks of weaponized agents existed up to the fall of the government and that during the ensuing  
118 disorder some stockpiles were released into unknown hands, perhaps representing a means by  
119 which terrorist organizations could have obtained the weapons.

120 In the wake of the Gulf War (1990-1991) rumors of a biological and chemical weapons  
121 program developed by Saddam Hussein while president of Iraq surfaced when United Nation  
122 weapons inspectors charged with the post-war disarmament of Iraq uncovered confounded  
123 evidence of the production of several weapons. These agents included *B. anthracis*, botulinum  
124 toxin, aflatoxin, ricin, and *Clostridium perfringens* toxin. Reportedly the Iraqi program  
125 assembled several thousand liters of botulinum toxin and weaponized *B. anthracis* spores  
126 outfitted for mass dissemination.<sup>13</sup> Continued rumors of basic research in developing weapons of  
127 mass destruction by Iraq and Saddam Hussien served in part for the justification for US invasion  
128 in 2003.<sup>13</sup> Upon invasion no stockpiles of biological weapons were uncovered and all indications  
129 suggest the Iraqi program had been discontinued and evidence of the weapons destroyed years  
130 before.

131 The most recent anthrax bioterrorist attack occurred in October and November of 2001  
132 when letters containing spores were mailed to the offices of Senators Tom Daschale and Patrick

133 Leahy as well as several news media offices. Known as Amerithrax, the intentional release of *B.*  
134 *anthracis* in this event resulted in the potential exposure of over 10,000 people, 21 infections and  
135 5 fatalities.<sup>14</sup> In 2005, Bruce Edward Ivins, an established biodefense researcher at United States  
136 Army Medical Research Institute for Infectious Disease became the major suspect in the federal  
137 investigation. The motive behind this offense was never realized as Dr. Ivins committed suicide  
138 prior to being fully charged, despite little direct evidence of his involvement. The most  
139 condemning evidence uncovered in the course of the investigation was the demonstration  
140 through molecular fingerprinting that unequivocally tied the strain used in the attack to strains  
141 found in Dr. Ivins laboratory. The impact of this attack resulted in an estimated cost of over \$100  
142 million dollars and the inspiration of over 5,000 hoaxes.<sup>14</sup>

143 *B. anthracis* spores lend themselves well to aerosolization. Weaponized or milled spores  
144 are 2-6 microns in diameter which is an ideal size for efficient suspension in air and inhalation  
145 into the lower respiratory tract. A Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) report  
146 estimated that following the release of weaponized *B. anthracis* spores under optimal  
147 metrological conditions along a 2 kilometer line upwind of a suburban population of 100,000  
148 inhabitants would result in approximately 50,000 cases of inhalational anthrax and 32,875  
149 deaths<sup>15</sup> The cost of such an attack scenario is estimated to be \$26.2 billion dollars.<sup>15</sup> The case  
150 attack and case fatality rates in this scenario represent far more infections and deaths than  
151 predicted for any other Category A agent release. Under these conditions the estimated range  
152 where exposure to spores results in 50% case fatality rates is approximately 160 kilometers  
153 downwind of the release site.<sup>15</sup> The CDC report may be conservative in its estimates by using an

154 infectious dose<sub>50</sub> (ID<sub>50</sub>) of 20,000 spores where other sources have referenced an ID<sub>50</sub> dose for  
155 humans under these conditions of 8,000-10,000 spores.<sup>16</sup>

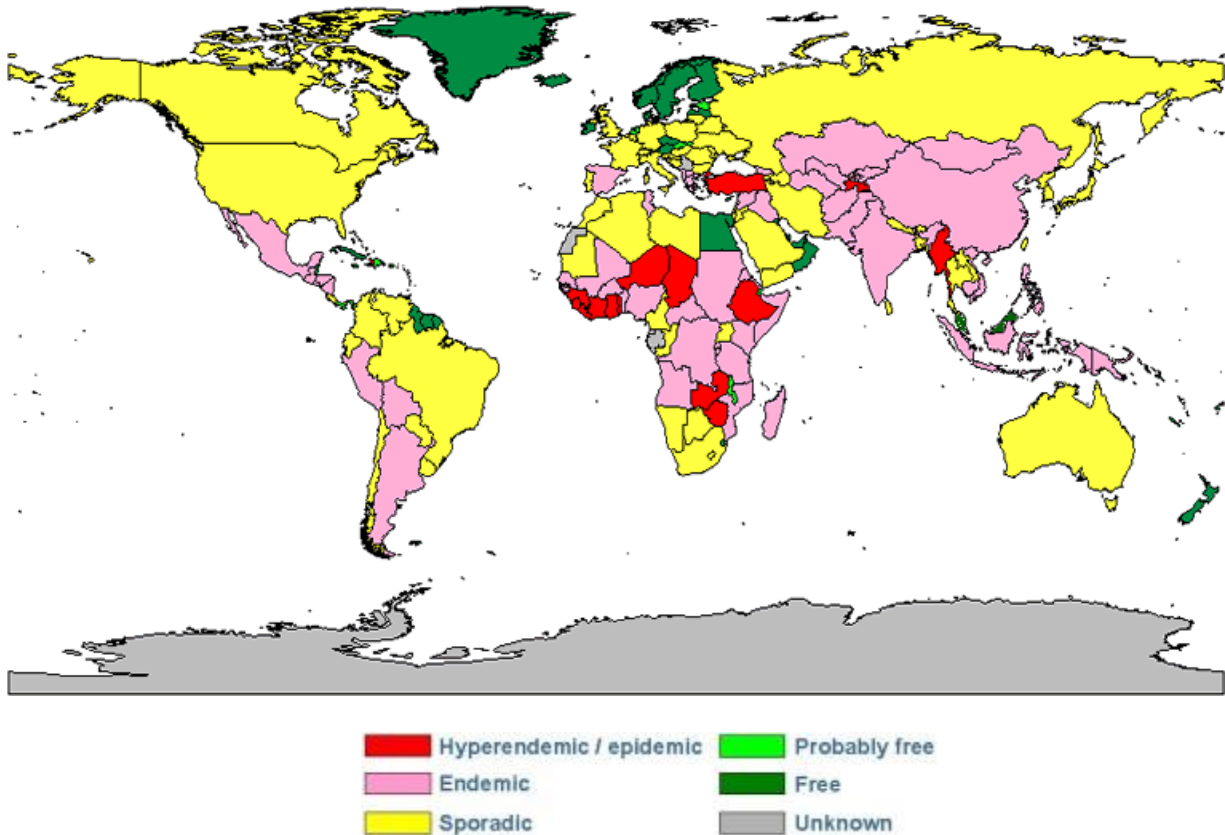
### 156 **Worldwide Incidence of Human Anthrax**

157         Despite these high profile outbreaks and release scenarios the global incidence of anthrax  
158 in humans and animals has declined in the last half century. This is thought largely to be the  
159 result of vaccination and improved animal husbandry and methods of animal processing.

160 International programs fostered by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the World  
161 Organization for Animal Health (OIE) have been successful in the vaccination of livestock, which  
162 is perceived to be the most critical step in reducing anthrax exposure to humans. However, as the  
163 incidence of the disease has waned, so has awareness. Recent resurgences in anthrax epizootics  
164 in developing nation appear to be fueled by the lack of experience of younger generations of  
165 farmers and animal health care providers and failure to recognize and report the disease quickly.

166         Anthrax is endemic in several tropical areas of the world including sub-Saharan Africa,  
167 the Middle East, Southern Europe and Central and South America. Small pockets of endemic  
168 locals exist in North America due to favorable soil conditions and repeated livestock infections

169 perpetually re-contaminating the environment.



170

171

172 **Figure 1.1 Global Prevalence of Anthrax** World Health Organization - 2012.

173         Developing nations have a higher incidence of human anthrax presumably associated  
174 with a more agrarian lifestyle and greater contact with infected livestock. The Ivory Coast area of  
175 West Africa has been classified as hyperendemic/epidemic by the WHO due to the highest  
176 reported incidence of anthrax in animals and humans.<sup>17</sup> Nearly continuous outbreaks of anthrax  
177 occur in the wildlife population of that region. Like many epidemic pathogens *B. anthracis* takes  
178 advantage of civil unrest. The largest recorded natural outbreak of human anthrax occurred in  
179 Zimbabwe, during the time of its civil war. At its peak in 1979 over 10,000 human cases were

180 recorded. The epidemic was fueled by an unprecedented concurrent epidemic of anthrax in  
181 livestock. The full extent of which has not been documented. A smaller outbreak in Thailand  
182 highlights the association of natural cases with infected livestock. In that outbreak 76 people  
183 from a single village presented with gastrointestinal anthrax following consumption of  
184 improperly cooked contaminated meat.<sup>18</sup> In the developed world preventative measures have  
185 limited outbreaks to very isolated occurrences often only associated with specific locations  
186 where *B. anthracis* spores contaminate the environment. Rarely do these endemic infections  
187 affect more than a few individual animals or humans.

## 188 **Biology of *Bacillus anthracis***

189

### 190 ***Bacillus anthracis* Taxonomy and Phenotype**

191

192 *B. anthracis* is a member of the Group 1 bacilli. The type species for this group is *Bacillus*

193 *cereus*. Collectively these organisms are non-fastidious, facultative anaerobic, soil organisms

194 with very similar growth characteristics and common natural transformation and conjugation

195 systems. The other members of this group include *B. cereus*, *B. thuringiensis*, *B. mycoides*, *B.*

196 *pseudomycoides*, and *B. weihenstephanensis*.<sup>19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24</sup>The defining characteristic of all

197 *Bacillus* species is the ability to produce a resistant endospore in the presence of oxygen. Only

198 three species of *Bacillus* have been reported to be pathogenic: *B. anthracis*; primarily a pathogen

199 of ruminants but can infect any warm blooded animal, *Bacillus cereus*; the most closely related

200 to *B. anthracis* based on sequence homology and the cause of major outbreaks of food borne

201 illness in humans, and *Bacillus thuringiensis*; an important pathogen of insects that also produces

202 pathogenesis through the production of toxins. *B. anthracis* possesses two virulence plasmids,

203 pXO1 and pXO2, that are the defining characteristic that allows differentiation from *B. cereus*.

204 <sup>25, 26, 27</sup>In addition there are approximately 150 genes that have been shown to differ between the  
205 two organisms.

206 The Group 1 Bacilli have among the narrowest genetic diversity of all Eubacteria.<sup>28</sup> In  
207 fact, the three pathogenic members of the genus have nearly exact homology based on DNA-  
208 DNA hybridization sequence analysis and electrophoresis profiling.<sup>29</sup> Helgason *et al.* concluded  
209 that based MLT studies the Group 1 Bacilli should in fact belong to one species and the current  
210 species be reorganized into subspecies based on the current phenotypes.<sup>23</sup> The existing  
211 nomenclature has been derived from observations of laboratory culture phenotype and clinical  
212 presentation. Traditionally, the presence of the virulence plasmids was sufficient to define  
213 specificity for *B. anthracis* but, there are some reports of rare *B. cereus* strains harboring  
214 plasmids similar in size and genetic content to pXO1 and pXO2 that manifest anthrax-like  
215 illnesses.<sup>30</sup> Enough heterology exists between the RNA polymerase B subunit of each of the  
216 species to provide partial laboratory differentiation.<sup>31</sup> More advanced differentiation techniques  
217 such as the susceptibility to gamma phages are hoped to provide a field test that is rapid and  
218 highly specific for differentiation.

219 *B. anthracis* is believed to have split from a common *B. cereus* ancestor relatively  
220 recently based on an absence of lateral gene transfer, few single nucleotide polymorphisms  
221 (SNPs) and limited genetic diversity within the few clades. *B. anthracis* species are further  
222 subdivided into three major clades or lineages (A, B, and C). The A-clade has the greatest  
223 worldwide distribution and accounts for >90% of anthrax infections globally.<sup>32</sup> While there is  
224 topographical complexity in this group, because of the very limited signature SNPs, it is  
225 necessary to conduct whole genome sequences to resolve clade classification. Once these SNPs

226 are verified however, they provide highly dependable signatures for phylogenetic  
227 reconstructions.<sup>33,34</sup>

228         The B clade has many fewer members and a limited geographic distribution compared to  
229 the A group. There are two distinct subgroups of the B clade; subclade B1 and B2. Subclade B1  
230 overlaps in geographic distribution with some members of the A clade within areas of Southern  
231 Africa.<sup>32,35,36</sup> The B2 subclade has been isolated most frequently from Southern Europe and once  
232 in the Western US.<sup>32,35,36</sup> In the regions where these organisms are found, the B clade is  
233 important in the epidemiology of anthrax but do not have the global significance of the A  
234 lineage. The fundamentally derived C lineage is rare and does not fall into easily defined spatial  
235 order. Only two isolates within this clade have been reported, each independently and from  
236 different regions within the US.<sup>32</sup> Some have suggested these represent an entirely distinct New  
237 World clade, but widespread distribution of the A clade across the North American continent  
238 indicates its presence here for some time and that the two C group isolates simply represent  
239 poorly classified outliers.<sup>38,39</sup>

240         The *B. anthracis* genome consists of three structures; the main bacterial chromosome and  
241 two virulence plasmids. The nucleotide composition of each of these, like other Gram positive  
242 organisms, has a low guanine and cytosine content (approximately 35%). Compared to the  
243 limited plasmids found in Gram positive organisms, the plasmids of *B. anthracis* are large and  
244 complex with many coding open reading frames. The most important of these are the three  
245 virulence genes. The most widely used reference strain in genetic analysis and fully virulent  
246 challenges is the Ames strain, a member of the group A clade.<sup>37</sup> Due to the intense investigation  
247 into the anthrax letters attack in 2001 in which this strain was used, a highly accurate library of

248 all the variants of this strain was developed. The genetic reference stock used in these  
249 investigations is relatively close to the original 1981 bovine isolate and should still be considered  
250 a clinical field isolate representative of wild-type strains with a limited number of laboratory  
251 passages separating it from a natural event. The Ames strain genome is 5,503,926 nucleotides in  
252 length with an estimated 5775 putative coding genes.<sup>37,38</sup> There are an additional 33 ribosomal  
253 genes arranged and 95 tRNA genes found within the chromosome. Together, these genes  
254 represent over 95% of the coding capacity of the entire genome. The two plasmids (pXO1 =  
255 181,677 bp; pXO2 = 94,830 bp) house the remaining 5% of genes.

256         The defining phenotype of *B. anthracis* is the ability to make and excrete the poly-D-  
257 glutamic acid capsule and the anthrax toxin proteins. The bacterium produces these virulence  
258 factors immediately upon germination and throughout exponential growth on a number of media  
259 types.<sup>40,41</sup> Highest toxin and capsule production occurs at 37<sup>0</sup>C and requires dissolved  
260 bicarbonate in the medium.<sup>39</sup> These virulence factors are produced early upon germination and  
261 reach highest levels of synthesis at the transition from exponential growth to the stationary  
262 phase.<sup>40,41</sup> The necessity of bicarbonate for virulence factor production is well described.<sup>40,42-44</sup>  
263 Dissolved bicarbonate within the growth media induces a 60-fold increase in the toxin gene and  
264 *cap* operon expression.<sup>45</sup> Temperature is also critical for toxin gene expression. When *B.*  
265 *anthracis* is grown at 37<sup>0</sup>C, it exhibits greater than 5-fold higher concentrations of toxin gene  
266 transcription than when grown at 28<sup>0</sup>C.<sup>44</sup> Other classic laboratory phenotypes include; the lack  
267 of  $\beta$ -hemolysis on ovine blood agar, lack of phospholipase C activity, lack of motility, and  
268 sensitivity to penicillin and gamma bacteriophage.<sup>46</sup> There are however exceptions to these  
269 characteristics, including motile strains that appear to produce flagella.<sup>47,48</sup> Penicillin-resistant



270 isolates have been isolated from natural infections and have been produced in laboratory  
271 settings.<sup>47,49-51</sup> Resistance to penicillin is imparted by two structural genes for  $\beta$ -lactamase  
272 proteins.<sup>38,52</sup> These *bla* genes though present in prototypical strains are transcriptionally silent,  
273 but are constitutively expressed in penicillin-resistant isolates.<sup>53,54</sup>

#### 274 **Cell and Colony Morphology**

275 *B. anthracis* cells viewed under the microscope have a very distinctive morphology.  
276 Vegetative bacilli are blunt-ended and approximately 1 by( check some references say 3-5) 5-8  
277  $\mu\text{m}$ . The capsule is easily visualized with direct light microscopy using India ink exclusion.<sup>40</sup> *B.*  
278 *anthracis* typically grows as linked planktonic cells in liquid media, but can form more complex  
279 structures during static incubation.<sup>55,56</sup> During log phase growth, *B. anthracis* forms long  
280 serpentine chains. In infected tissues, however only single cells or short chains of 2-3 cells are  
281 observed.<sup>57</sup> When grown on solid media under conditions that support capsule formation, *B.*  
282 *anthracis* colonies appear mucoid due to the moisture-rich capsule, which can be more than 3  
283  $\mu\text{m}$  in thickness.<sup>40</sup> Rough or non-capsular colonies are said to look like “ground glass” and  
284 appear off-white to cream in color with verticillate edges. When the vegetative cell is stressed, the  
285 bacterium is induced to sporulate. There are many established sporulation protocols. All are  
286 based on nutrient restriction and some form of temperature stress to induce sporulation.<sup>58-62</sup>  
287 Sporulating cells can be visualized with phase microscopy. The forespores form centrally or sub-  
288 terminally within the mother cell.<sup>63</sup> Other than a 1 – 1.5  $\mu\text{m}$  refractile oval body, there is no other  
289 change in the mother cell during sporulation.

290 *B. anthracis* is a facultative anaerobe that is easily grown on a number of laboratory  
291 media and use a variety of energy sources.<sup>55,64</sup> Most metabolism studies have focused on the

292 relationship between nutrient utilization and toxin production. Therefore, the exact nutritional  
293 requirements of *B. anthracis* have only been defined by proxy and appear vary by strain.  
294 Methionine and thiamine are known to be necessary for fit growth. When *B. anthracis* is cultured  
295 in glucose-salts, medium supplementation with multiple amino acids is necessary. Under these  
296 conditions nitrogen appears to be a limiting factor forcing the bacterium to de-amine the amino  
297 acids.<sup>65</sup> The optimal temperature for growth is 37<sup>0</sup> C or normal body temperature. Prolonged  
298 growth at 42<sup>0</sup> C clears the bacterium of one or both plasmids and renders the organism avirulent.  
299 Growth cannot be sustained at temperatures greater the 43<sup>0</sup> C. Cell doubling times on rich media  
300 ranges from 30-60 minutes at 37<sup>0</sup> C. <sup>66-68</sup>

### 301 **The *Bacillus anthracis* spore**

302  
303 *Bacillus anthracis* exists in two distinct forms; the vegetative form and the spore form.  
304 Spores are considered to be the form most frequently encountered in the environment. When  
305 exposed to the low oxygen surroundings of the host the vegetative form predominates. The  
306 initiating step in the anthrax infection cycle is the entry of the spore into a susceptible host. Upon  
307 entry spores germinate and rapidly divide, reaching high numbers in effectively any body tissues.  
308 Death of the host and contact of the organisms to air induces spore formation in a proportion of  
309 the bacilli completing the infection cycle, whereupon the organism returns to the soil ready to be  
310 taken up by the next host. All *Bacillus* species depend on the spore for resistance to harsh  
311 environmental conditions. Because *B. anthracis* lives a dichotomous existence between host and  
312 environment it has been suggested that survival of the species unconditionally requires spore  
313 formation until the next host arrives.<sup>69</sup>

### 314 **Spore Anatomy**

315           The spore is a series of thin permeable layers enclosing the tougher impermeable core.  
316   The core protects the chromosome which exists in a dehydrated tightly folded state surrounded  
317   by proteins called small acid-soluble proteins (SASPs).<sup>70,71</sup> This complex of DNA and SASPs,  
318   along with the high calcium dipicolinic acid concentrations protects the chromosome for  
319   desiccations, heat and radiation. Very little metabolic activity occurs within the core. The spore  
320   maintains contact with the outside environment through passive diffusion of ions and small  
321   molecules into the core. Juxtaposed to the core is the spore membrane and surrounding it is a  
322   peptidoglycan cortex. Both function in restricting diffusion of molecules and in maintaining an  
323   appropriately desiccated level of moisture within the core.<sup>72</sup>

324           Surrounding the cortex is the lamellar protein coat.<sup>73,74</sup> Transmission electron microscopy  
325   reveals an appearance of ridges and valleys in the contour rather than a smooth sphere.<sup>74-78</sup> The  
326   majority of the spores environmental resistance arises from the protein coat which is  
327   accomplished by preventing penetration of large degradative molecules, small reactive molecules  
328   (such as gluteraldehyde) and predation by other microbes.<sup>79-83</sup> Despite this apparent robustness,  
329   the coat is flexible. As the core swells with water accumulation prior to germination, the ridges  
330   of the coat unfold to accommodate the increase in diameter.<sup>84</sup>

331           The outer most layer of the spore is known as the exosporium, which is present in several  
332   other *Bacillus* species.<sup>85-87</sup> The exosporium is composed of two layers; the basal layer and the  
333   nap layer. The basal layer is composed of a complex protienaceous shell surrounding the coat.  
334   The nap layer forms a series of hair-like extension from the basal layer. A small interspace  
335   separates the basal layer from the coat. The contents of the interspace include many enzymes  
336   whose independent function has not been fully defined. Some of these enzymes function in

337 maintaining the spore state, while others once activated by the germination signals function in  
338 degrading the cortex and coat.

339 In recent years the proteins of the exosporium have received considerable attention in  
340 hopes of identifying vaccine antigen candidates and ligands for spore detection.<sup>88,89</sup> BclA is a  
341 collagen-like glycoprotein that extends out from the nap layer. Attached to its C terminal domain  
342 is a separate polysaccharide residue (known as antharose).<sup>90-94</sup> Together these compounds are the  
343 major immunodominant epitopes.<sup>92,95</sup> Thompson *et al.* demonstrated BclA is necessary for  
344 interaction with macrophage surface integrin CD11b/CD18.<sup>96</sup> Others have shown that neither  
345 BclA nor the exosporium are required for virulence when a large challenge dose is used.<sup>91,93,97-99</sup>  
346 In nature, where cutaneous and gastrointestinal infections are more common and the infectious  
347 dose is hypothesized to be lower than in laboratory animal infections, the necessity of BclA and  
348 the exosporium may be more important. Another collagen-like glycoprotein found in the  
349 exosporium is BclB. While not as well characterized as BclA, this protein is known to function  
350 as a scaffolding or structural protein during exosporium assembly as *bclB* mutant spores possess  
351 a fragile exosporium.<sup>100</sup>

352 There are many undefined exosporium proteins in *B. anthracis*. The substantial variation  
353 in composition and structure of the exosporium between *Bacillus* species has led investigators to  
354 speculate that these distinctive structures contribute to the maintenance of niche populations  
355 within complex environments.<sup>79,101</sup> It is logical to speculate that the *B. anthracis* exosporium  
356 plays as significant a role in spore resistance and survival within the host, as it does in the  
357 environment. Currently, it is unclear which of the proteins making up the exosporium contributes  
358 to such a role or if there exist any specific adaption to host defenses.

359 **Sporulation**

360 In the natural setting the process of sporulation is initiated through exposure to highly  
361 aerobic environment and starvation of carbon, nitrogen or phosphorus.<sup>99,102-106</sup> Within infected  
362 hosts, the low oxygen environment coupled with warm temperatures and easily accessible  
363 nutrients permits the nearly exclusive presence of the vegetative form. In contrast, outside the  
364 host under hostile conditions the organism can only exist in the spore form. Spore formation (or  
365 sporulation) is an intricate synchronized process requiring up to 8 hours under optimal conditions  
366 to complete.<sup>107</sup>

367 The specific triggers for sporulation are have not been fully defined. However, it is  
368 known that the initiation of spore formation involves a signal transduction network that  
369 integrates information regarding nutrient concentration, cell cycle stage and presence or absence  
370 of secreted factors.<sup>104,108</sup> The mechanistic details of this process have largely been extrapolated  
371 from studies of *Bacillus subtilis* and are directly applicable to *B. anthracis*.

372 Seven sporulation stages are described based on their appearance under electron  
373 microscopy and analysis of genetic elements involved in the process. During the pre-divisional  
374 stage or stage 0 cells are morphologically indistinguishable from actively growing vegetative  
375 cells. Near the end of this stage, the nucleoid forms a bulky mass in the center of the cell in  
376 preparation for division. In stage I, the nucleoid extends from pole to pole to form the axial  
377 filament. At this point, two copies of the chromosome are present to ensure each compartment  
378 will inherit a full copy of the genome. Stage II begins with a polar septum dividing the  
379 sporangium into two compartments: the spore precursor or forespore and the mother cell. The  
380 genome is pulled into the forespore by translocation. A phagocytosis-like envelopment of the

381 forespore by the mother cell membrane begins stage III. When the engulfment is complete, the  
382 outside edges of the mother cell membrane join around the forespore which then pinches away  
383 from its polar attachment. At this point, the forespore is released and free within the mother cell  
384 cytoplasm. The exterior membrane that originated from the mother cell becomes the outer  
385 forespore membrane, while the inner membrane is termed the inner forespore membrane. Stages  
386 IV and V contain the synthesis of a modified peptidoglycan layer that will span the forespore  
387 membranes and will later become the spore cortex. During stage VI, the complex structure of the  
388 spore coat is assembled from more than fifty different proteins assembled by the mother cell.  
389 Finally, in stage VII the spore is released following degradation of the mother cell.

### 390 **The Ecology of *B. anthracis***

391           There is little well documented evidence for how long *B. anthracis* spores can persist.  
392 Jacotot and Viratt demonstrated that anthrax spores grown by Pasteur in 1888 were viable in  
393 1954.<sup>109</sup> Wilson and Russell recover spores that had persisted in dry soil for over 60 years.<sup>110</sup>  
394 The longest survival claim to date occurred when spores were recovered from bones carbon-  
395 dated at  $200 \pm 50$  years found in an archeological site Kruger National Park, South Africa.<sup>111</sup>

396           The environmental conditions that appear to favor persistence of spore include dryness,  
397 alkaline soil pH and calcium content of the soil. Factors that discourage germination, such as  
398 lack of available nutrients and germination determinants appear to be equally important. Even  
399 though *B. anthracis* spores are capable of extreme persistence, investigators report that upon  
400 germination of such isolates the organism frequently has been cured of one of the virulence  
401 plasmids, usually pXO2.<sup>112</sup> Turnbull *et al.* suggested that in the desiccated state the plasmids  
402 may not be as well protected as the cell genome.<sup>112</sup> This arrangement may in fact provide an

403 evolutionary advantage for an obligate pathogen like *B. anthracis* in that the virulence genes are  
404 readily accessible upon germination and the vegetative bacilli can rapidly induce pathogenesis.

405         The influence of climate, rainfall, temperature, soil, vegetation, population density, and  
406 host condition on the epidemiology and incidence of anthrax has been thoroughly examined, but  
407 few meaningful patterns can be drawn about each condition. Nevertheless, important overarching  
408 themes can be identified. It is a consistent observation that anthrax occurs in the hottest times of  
409 the year and is especially prevalent in arid climates. Drought conditions first create changes in  
410 potential host behavior and susceptibility. For example, herbivores may come in contact with  
411 more spores by grazing closer to the ground in periods of sparse forage or by increasing time  
412 spent near water where spores also tend to concentrate. An indirect effect of drought is through  
413 increased host susceptibility associated with poorer general health and resistance to  
414 infection.<sup>113,114</sup>

415         An association between spore persistence and alkaline soil pH was first made by Higgins  
416 in 1916.<sup>115</sup> Van Ness and Stein observed patterns of livestock outbreaks in the US and concluded  
417 that endemicity was correlated with soils of pH greater than 6.0 and ambient temperatures above  
418 15.5 °C.<sup>116</sup> Overlaying a map of the spatial distribution of the soil types found in North America  
419 with soils possessing these characteristics confirms that the majority of naturally occurring  
420 anthrax infections in the United States occur in the mollisol and aridisol soils.<sup>117</sup> These soil  
421 types, particularly chernozan and kastanozem, which have a high pH and are rich in organic  
422 matter are found in other anthrax endemic area such as the steppes of Russia and Central  
423 Asia.<sup>118-120</sup> In South America the highest incidence of naturally occurring outbreaks are found in  
424 intensively grazed areas of Argentina associated with the related phaezoam soils. In Kruger

425 National Park, South Africa areas with a pH greater than 7.0 and calcium concretions exceeding  
426 15 millequivalents have been associated with anthrax death rates in wildlife seven times higher  
427 than in areas with lower values.<sup>121</sup>

428 Topography greatly influences *B. anthracis* spore survival in areas that are largely  
429 lacking favorable soil conditions. An example is in areas of South Texas, shallow depressions or  
430 pot holes collect greater amounts of water than the surrounding acidic, sandy-loam and gradually  
431 accumulate humus and minerals eventually resulting in a suitable locus for *B. anthracis*.<sup>122</sup> Such  
432 places participate in the ecology of *B. anthracis* infection in other ways as well. Because of the  
433 greater soil moisture and richness these areas harbor more forage and water longer between  
434 rains, thus attracting herbivores and providing exposure to infectious doses. A similar  
435 phenomenon has been reported in the bar pits along the Mississippi river delta from which soil  
436 was excavated to construct the levees lining the river.<sup>123</sup> The excavation of the soil provided  
437 shallow depressions that create similar favorable microcosms for *B. anthracis*. These areas have  
438 come to be known as “incubator areas” of anthrax.

439 Water appears to be a necessary element in the movement of spores. *B. anthracis* spores  
440 have a high surface hydrophobicity that results in a high level of buoyancy and permits flotation  
441 of the spores during times of heavy rain.<sup>124</sup> Historical examples exist in the United Kingdom  
442 where watercourses were implicated in the dissemination of *B. anthracis* spores from tanneries  
443 where contaminated effluent was released.<sup>125</sup> Drought ending rains have been implicated in the  
444 rise in anthrax infections for similar reasons. This is particularly evident in the annual incidence  
445 of anthrax in the wildlife population following monsoon rains in Kruger National Park, South  
446 Africa.<sup>126</sup>



447 **Germination**

448 Germination is the return of dormant spores to vegetative metabolically active cells. This  
449 process is triggered by multiple germinants including, amino acids, ribonucleosides, and/or  
450 peptidoglycan fragments. These compounds are detected by receptors located on the surface of  
451 the spore. High concentrations of germinants initiates a mutable cascade of events beginning  
452 with the influx of water and rehydration of the core, followed by the disassembling of the cortex  
453 and coat. Rehydration is succeeded closely by resumption of metabolic activity and outgrowth of  
454 the vegetative cell. There are five independent pathways that *B. anthracis* uses to accomplish  
455 germination each associated with different amino acids at varying concentrations. These five  
456 pathways are the alanine pathway, the alanine-proline pathway, the aromatic pathway, and two  
457 amino acid and inosine dependent pathways (AAID). The AAID pathways depend on the  
458 nucleoside inosine in combination with L-alanine, L-proline, L-serine, L-valine, or L-methionine  
459 (AAID-1) or inosine combined with any of the aromatic amino acids (AAID-2).<sup>127,128</sup>

460 L-alanine is among the most potent of germinants for *B. anthracis*. Tight control of this  
461 process is critical for the bacterium to ensure germination occurs only in nutrient rich and  
462 favorable environments. One key regulatory element is an enzyme called alanine racemase  
463 which is found attached to the exosporium. This enzyme converts the active L-alanine to the  
464 inactive D-alanine and at low amino acid concentrations prevents premature germination. When  
465 environmental L-alanine reaches high concentrations, the racemase enzyme is overwhelmed  
466 allowing active L-alanine to penetrate the core and initiate germinations.<sup>129</sup>

467 The genetic regulation of germination in *B. anthracis* is mediated through the *gerA*  
468 family of genes. This regulon contains 6 genes, 5 chromosomal genes and 1, *gerX*, located within

469 a pathogenicity island on pXO1.<sup>130</sup> Each of the gene products are responsible for sensing one or  
470 more of the specific amino acid germinant signals and each appear to be necessary. Disruption of  
471 any one gene abolishes the ability to germinate. Null mutation of *gerX* decreases germination  
472 efficiency as well as reduces virulence compared to the parent strain.<sup>126</sup>

### 473 **Pathogenesis**

474 The pathogenesis of *Bacillus anthracis* is entirely responsible for genes found on each of  
475 the virulence plasmids and located within four pathogenicity islands. The most pathogenic  
476 virulence factors are a poly-D-glutamic acid capsule and two binary toxins called lethal toxin or  
477 edema toxin. The toxins are composed of three independent subunits a common transport protein  
478 known as protective antigen (PA) and two effector molecules known as lethal factor (LF) and  
479 edema factor (EF). Absence of either of these plasmids attenuates the virulence of the bacterium.  
480 Curing the bacterium of pXO2 which houses the capsule genes increases the LD<sub>50</sub> by 6 fold  
481 compared to fully virulent strains in mice.<sup>131</sup> One of the most prevalent toxigenic acapsular  
482 (pXO1<sup>+</sup>, pXO2<sup>-</sup>) strains is known as the Sterne strain and has been used extensively as a live  
483 attenuated vaccine in livestock and humans.

### 484 **Lethal and Edema Toxins**

485 The symptoms associated with anthrax infection are principally the result of toxin  
486 production. The genes that encode for each of the toxins are housed on the pXO1 plasmid. The  
487 larger of the two plasmids at 181 kb, this plasmid encodes approximately 143 open reading  
488 frames many of which the functions are not yet known. All three toxin genes, *pagA*, *lef*, and *cya*,  
489 are arranged in a single operon within a 44 kb pathogenicity island flanked by two insertion  
490 elements. Though the plasmid shares a similar G/C content with the bacterial chromosome, this

491 island does not share the same conformity and appears to be the result of a more recent  
492 horizontal gene transfer.<sup>132, 133</sup> The plasmids have also been found in the rare isolates of *B.*  
493 *cereus* that demonstrate a similar virulence and clinical manifestation as *B. anthracis*, but it is  
494 not clear if these elements have been recently acquired by these strains or if these few isolates  
495 are remnants of the parent organism prior to the diversion of *B. anthracis* and *B. cereus*.<sup>31</sup>

496 The tri-partite toxin is classified as an A-B type toxin. The protective antigen protein is  
497 encoded by the gene *pagA*, whose transcription is enhanced by *atxA* and suppressed by *pagR*.  
498 Protective antigen serves as the B subunit for both toxins and is responsible for cell surface  
499 receptor binding and translocation of the pathogenic A subunits, LF and EF. Protective antigen is  
500 a cell-free secreted protein that has a molecular mass of 83kDa and is arranged into four domains  
501 of mostly anti-parallel  $\beta$ -pleated sheets.<sup>134</sup>

502 The host receptors for PA are tumor endothelial marker 8 (ANTXR1) and capillary  
503 morphogenesis protein 2 (ANTXR2).<sup>135</sup> These are surface associated proteins with unknown host  
504 targets but, each contains a von Willebrand factor A domain suggesting participation in  
505 coagulation.<sup>136</sup> X-ray crystallography of bound PA confirms that domain 4 is responsible for  
506 mediating the interaction with these receptors.<sup>134</sup> Once PA binds to these receptors, a furin or  
507 furin-like protease cleaves an exposed site at residues 164-167 within the 83 kDa precursor  
508 protein.<sup>137</sup> This releases a 20 kDa fragment from the N-terminal end, while the 63 kDa C-  
509 terminal end remains adhered to the receptor. Complex interactions between phospholipid rafts  
510 in the cell membrane and the interaction of multiple receptors allow bound PA to polymerize  
511 into a heptameric pre-pore structure.<sup>138</sup> Once a heptamere is formed EF and LF can  
512 competitively bind an exposed binding site on PA through a conserved domain on the amino

513 terminal of each of the proteins. The congregation of multiple receptor molecules induces a  
514 clathrin-dependent endocytosis of each of the heptamere-toxin complexes.<sup>139</sup> When the  
515 endocytic vesicle fuses with a cytoplasmic lysosome, a decrease in the pH occurs that leads to a  
516 change in the conformation of the heptamer. This allows the pre-pore to insert into the membrane  
517 of endolysosome and act as a  $\beta$ -barrel pore through which EF and LF are released into the cell  
518 cytoplasm. Initially, it was thought that seven effector molecules could be translocated with each  
519 heptamer. Recent studies have demonstrated that due to steric interference only a hypothetical  
520 maximum of three subunits can bind the heptamer. When crystallography of the structure was  
521 attempted only a single molecule of EF or LF was observed bound to each heptamer.<sup>140</sup>

## 522 **Edema Factor**

523 Edema factor is secreted as inactive adenylate cyclase during active bacterial growth.  
524 <sup>141,142,143</sup> Similar to the adenylate cyclase in structure and activity to the adenylate cyclase of  
525 *Bordetella pertussis*, activation of the enzymatic activity of EF is dependent upon interaction  
526 with calcium ions and the host molecule calmodulin.<sup>142</sup> After entry into the cell, the native EF is  
527 bound by calmodulin which induces a 30° rotation of a helical domain and allows the protein to  
528 then bind a single calcium ion and a single molecule of 3'dATP. This exposes and activates the  
529 catalytic site of the enzyme.<sup>144</sup> Once activated, EF converts the bound 3'dATP into cyclic  
530 adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). Cyclic adenosine monophosphate is an ubiquitous secondary  
531 cell messenger and participates in the regulation of many cellular processes. The enzyme attacks  
532 the host cell's ATP stores rapidly consuming the cell's energy currency. Within minutes EF  
533 converts up to half of the cell's ATP to a concentration of cAMP 10<sup>3</sup> times the normal  
534 concentration.<sup>142</sup> The elevated cAMP levels trigger the loss of water and ions from the cell,

535 causing the accumulation of fluids into surrounding tissues and the characteristic edema found in  
536 anthrax infection. Though the extent of cytotoxicity attributed to EF is debated, the enzyme also  
537 contributes to virulence in other ways. Purified edema toxin is a potent inhibitor of neutrophil  
538 chemotaxis and directly reduces phagocytic ability and oxidative burst.<sup>145, 146</sup> In addition, EF can  
539 modulate important pro-inflammatory cytokines and interfere with the innate immune  
540 response.<sup>147, 148</sup> Edema toxin was shown to be lethal in BALB/c mice at very low doses.<sup>149</sup> Post  
541 mortem analysis revealed accumulation of fluid in several tissues including the gastrointestinal  
542 tract, adrenal glands, secondary lymphoid organs, myocardium, and kidneys. The final outcome  
543 of intoxication was multi-organ failure.<sup>152</sup> The increased concentration of cAMP in cardiac  
544 pacemaker cells have also been implicated with bradycardia and cardiac failure.<sup>150</sup> Lovchik *et al.*  
545 generated an isogenic mutant of the Ames strain that expressed only edema toxin but was equally  
546 as lethal as the wild-type and lethal toxin expressing strains in a rabbit challenge model.<sup>151</sup>

547

## 548 **Lethal Factor**

549 Lethal factor is a zinc-metalloprotease capable of cleaving and inactivating many cellular  
550 targets. The most important target for LF is cleavage and inactivation of mitogen activated  
551 protein kinase kinase (MAPKKs).<sup>152</sup> The *lef* gene is housed on the pXO1 plasmid and similar to  
552 EF its expression is regulated through the *atxA* regulon. The majority of the cytotoxicity  
553 observed in anthrax infections has been attributed to lethal toxin. Murine macrophages exposed  
554 to lethal toxin undergo apoptosis and show rapid cell lysis.<sup>153</sup> Mortality in mice and rats can be  
555 induced within as little as 60 minutes after administration of lethal toxin.<sup>153-155</sup> *B. anthracis*  
556 deficient in the *lef* gene have been shown to have a greater the 10<sup>3</sup> increase in the LD<sub>50</sub> relative

557 to wild-type strains, whereas disruption of the *cya* gene resulted in only a 10-fold increase in the  
558 the LD<sub>50</sub> in mice.<sup>155, 163</sup>

559         Macrophages are the primary target of lethal toxin which results in specific and drastic  
560 effects. Although other cell types are affected by lethal toxin, only macrophages are lysed by the  
561 toxin. Lethal toxin administration to transgenic mice lacking macrophages suffered much less  
562 pathology than outbred mice highlighting the central role macrophages play in *B. anthracis*  
563 pathogenicity.<sup>153</sup> Specifically, LF targets several of the macrophages' MAPKKs including;  
564 MEK1, MEK2, MEK3, MEK4, MEK6, and MEK7.<sup>156,157</sup> Reduction or alteration in these  
565 molecules occurs in some continuous macrophage cell lines. These alterations confer *in vitro*  
566 resistance to lethal toxin, but have not been correlated with survivability and reduced morbidity  
567 *in vivo*.<sup>164, 158</sup> The discordant results suggest that macrophages must first be sensitized or  
568 activated before suffering the full cytotoxicity caused by LF. Exposure of resistant macrophage  
569 cell lines to TNF- $\alpha$  and calyculin A appear to induce sensitivity and result in increased  
570 cytotoxicity following exposure to lethal toxin.<sup>166, 159</sup>

571         Lethal toxin functions to suppress the host innate and adaptive immune response and  
572 disrupt cell signaling pathways. Interference with the MAPKK signaling pathways disrupts  
573 cytokine production, macrophage activation, neutrophil response, and barrier integrity of lung  
574 epithelial cells.<sup>160, 161</sup> Many immune cell types are affected by lethal toxin under *in vitro*  
575 conditions. Lethal toxin exposure to dendritic cells reduced TNF- $\alpha$  and IL-10 production.<sup>148</sup>  
576 CD4<sup>+</sup> lymphocytes exhibited reduced IL-2 secretion and auto-activation following lethal toxin  
577 exposure.<sup>162</sup> The apoptotic effects of LF have been attributed to activation of p38 MAP kinase.<sup>163</sup>

578 Systemically, lethal toxin leads to hypovolemic shock, hypoxia and multi-organ  
579 dysfunction and failure. The damage to vascular endothelium leads to systemic vasculitis and  
580 leakage from capillary beds. This is believed to be the source of the characteristic pleural and  
581 peritoneal effusion compound by severe necrosis of the spleen and liver.<sup>149, 164</sup> Lethal toxin  
582 damages endothelial barriers through modification of central actin fibers which alters the shape  
583 and integrity of the cells.<sup>165</sup> When combined in a rat constant rat infusion model both toxins  
584 produced synergistic virulence leading to circulatory collapse and death.<sup>166</sup>

### 585 **Capsule and S-Layer**

586 The capsule of *B. anthracis* is composed of repeating polymers of D-glutamic acid. It  
587 represents the outermost layer of vegetative cells. The simplicity of repeating D-glutamic acid  
588 residues makes the capsule poorly immunogenic.<sup>167</sup> Additionally, the length and structure of the  
589 extended glycoproteins serves to cover other antigens on the cell surface and makes the  
590 bacterium difficult to phagocytize.<sup>167</sup> These attributes permit successful immune evasion and  
591 persistence. The capsule operon consists of five genes (*capA*, *capB*, *capC*, *capD* and *capE*) found  
592 on the pXO2 plasmid.<sup>25,40-42,168</sup> CapD is a glutamyl transpeptidase responsible for attaching the  
593 capsule to the bacterial membrane. The remaining genes encode for the capsule synthesis  
594 proteins.<sup>41</sup> Capsule synthesis is regulated by bicarbonate concentration and *atxA*, as well as two  
595 other independent regulatory genes, *acpA* and *acpB*.<sup>40,41,44,45,168-171</sup>

596 The capsule is necessary for virulence in inhalational challenges of mice by equipping the  
597 pathogen with anti-phagocytic attributes.<sup>41</sup> Jang *et al.* demonstrated that administration of  
598 capsule fragments enhanced the cytotoxicity of lethal toxin in J774A.1 mouse macrophages.<sup>172</sup>  
599 Loss of the pXO2 plasmid can be induced naturally or experimentally and significantly reduces

600 the virulence of the strain.<sup>138,173</sup> Recently, the capsule synthesis operon was shown to be essential  
601 for trafficking of *B. anthracis* to regional lymph nodes during infection.<sup>174</sup> Strains of *B. anthracis*  
602 lacking pXO2, most notably *B. anthracis* Sterne strain, have been used extensively in vaccine  
603 production.<sup>175</sup> The capsule itself has been investigated as a vaccine candidate with limited  
604 success.<sup>176-178</sup>

605 The S-layer is a protein layer located between the outer capsule and the peptidoglycan  
606 cell wall. This thin layer is made up of two proteins known as extractable antigen 1 (Ea-1) and  
607 surface array protein (Sap).<sup>179</sup> Each protein is produced independently and therefore the  
608 composition of the S-layer changes depending upon the growth phase of the bacterium. The Sap  
609 protein is assembled first upon germination and outgrowth. During the stationary phase Sap  
610 proteins are slowly replaced by Ea-1 proteins. As the interface between the capsule and bacterial  
611 membrane the S-layer plays a role in maintaining cell shape, inhibition of complement mediated  
612 cytolysis and subterfuge of host macrophages.<sup>143</sup> It does not appear to be necessary for virulence  
613 as its removal does not affect the LD<sub>50</sub> in mice following virulent challenge.<sup>180</sup> Because of the  
614 interaction with macrophages upon phagocytosis of the bacterium and mediation of resistance to  
615 complement defenses, it still may remain important to the course of disease in anthrax  
616 infections.<sup>143</sup> The S-layer has been demonstrated to be recognized by the immune system and  
617 therefore may have potential as a vaccine candidate.<sup>181, 182</sup>

## 618 **Virulence Regulation**

619 Virulence expression is regulated by a *trans*-acting global regulator called AtxA (for  
620 Anthrax toxin activator) that is encoded on the pXO1 plasmid. The AtxA protein is a global  
621 regulator for *B. anthracis* and is involved with regulation of over 70 genes located in the



622 chromosome and the plasmids.<sup>171,183-185</sup> Null *atxA* mutants display significantly lower  
623 transcription of each of the toxin genes and is highly attenuated in murine infection models.<sup>186-188</sup>  
624 The precise mechanism by which AtxA exerts its regulation is not clear and there are no reports  
625 of direct action with any of its target genes. Direct interaction with DNA appears possible as  
626 AtxA possesses several putative DNA binding motifs.<sup>189</sup> Other important structural features of  
627 AtxA include two centrally located phosphotransferase system regulation domains (PRD).<sup>190</sup> The  
628 putative function of PRDs is associated with the uptake of specific sugar molecules suggesting  
629 that activation of AtxA and virulence expression is linked with carbohydrate availability and  
630 resource awareness.

631         Investigations by Dale *et al.* suggest that steady-state levels of AtxA are necessary for  
632 transcription of all three toxin genes.<sup>191</sup> AtxA activates transcription of *pagA* (gene encoding PA)  
633 and its repressor *pagR*. PagR in turn provides suppression of *atxA* transcription thereby  
634 controlling toxin synthesis through a negative feedback loop.<sup>184</sup> PagR also represses the *sap*  
635 gene, while activating the *eag* gene.<sup>192,193</sup> This effect essentially alters the composition of the  
636 bacterial surface in favor of Ea-1 surface proteins. AtxA induces capsule synthesis through  
637 activation of *acpA* and *acpB*.<sup>40</sup>

638         Bicarbonate ion concentration also appears to play a critical role in the induction of  
639 virulence genes in *B. anthracis*. The optimal bicarbonate ion concentration for toxin expression  
640 mirrors the concentration that is found in the bloodstream of mammals which is 48 mM. Though  
641 increased levels of bicarbonate ions has been shown to increase expression of *atxA* the regulatory  
642 effects of bicarbonate ion on toxin and capsule synthesis appear to be independent of AtxA.<sup>194</sup> In  
643 strains cured of pXO1, elevated CO<sub>2</sub> concentration resulted in increased levels of transcription of

644 the capsule regulatory genes *acpA* and *acpB* to levels observed in wild-type expression.<sup>195</sup> By  
645 coupling virulence production to bicarbonate ion concentration, *B. anthracis* limits costly  
646 production of its virulence factors until it is necessary in order to survive and thrive in the host.

647 *B. anthracis* produces lethal and edema toxin constitutively during vegetative growth, but  
648 expression is not consistent at all stages of growth. Toxin production and secretion is highest  
649 during exponential growth and in early stationary phase.<sup>196</sup> This is in part due to the actions of  
650 two regulatory genes, *abrB* and *spo0A*. *ArbB* is a transition state regulatory gene that provides  
651 constant negative regulation of *atxA* throughout the growth cycle. As the vegetative cells  
652 approach late logarithmic growth and begin to sense nutrient deprivation the *spo0A* genes are  
653 activated.<sup>197</sup> Activation of *spo0A* acts as a repressor of *abrB*, leading to a burst of virulence  
654 expression potentially as the host suffers from severe systemic pathology and near the end of the  
655 infection phase.<sup>150</sup>

656

### 657 **Other Virulence Factors**

658 The plasmids of *B. anthracis* encode for a number of other more recently identified  
659 virulence factors. When grown under strict anaerobic conditions, *B. anthracis* can produce the  
660 anthrolysins.<sup>198</sup> The anthrolysins are secreted hemolysins that appear to be evolutionary remnants  
661 of *Bacillus* virulence factors as homologs of these enzymes have been identified in *Bacillus*  
662 *cereus* and *Bacillus thuringiensis*.<sup>199</sup> They consist of four proteins, Anthrolysin O and three  
663 phospholipase C molecules. Expression of the anthrolysins begins early in infection and they are  
664 induced soon after phagocytosis.<sup>198</sup> In fact, mutations in the bacterial phospholipase C genes  
665 impair the persistence of spores when co-cultured with mouse macrophages.<sup>198</sup> The full catalog

666 of anthrolysin susceptible cells is not known but an effect on human peripheral blood cells was  
667 shown *in vitro*.<sup>200</sup>

668         Due to its rapid growth during infection and to a partially intracellular phase within  
669 macrophages, *B. anthracis* highly depends on two well-defined siderophores for continual uptake  
670 of iron.<sup>201,202</sup> Each of these is homologous to siderophores that have been identified in other  
671 *Bacillus* sp. Other virulence factors include putative collagen binding adhesins located on the  
672 surface of the actively dividing cells.<sup>203</sup> These proteins serve two functions, to aid in adherence to  
673 the interstitial matrix and help protect them from attack from the host immune system. *B.*  
674 *anthracis* like other Gram positive organisms possess an elegant mechanism for altering the  
675 negative charge on many of its surface macromolecules. The products of the *dltABCD* operon  
676 function to covalently attach a positively charged D-alanine to lipoteichoic acid. This alteration  
677 in surface charge affords greater defense against lysozyme and  $\beta$ -defensin-1 and other leukocyte  
678 antibacterial molecules.<sup>204</sup> Altering the charge on the bacterial cell surface imparts resistance to  
679 positively charged antibiotics as well.<sup>204</sup>

#### 680 **Diseases caused by *Bacillus anthracis***

681         *B. anthracis* is the causative agent of anthrax. The disease occurs in all vertebrates, but  
682 cattle and sheep are most susceptible. Carnivores are relatively resistant to anthrax and humans  
683 occupy an intermediate position between herbivores and carnivores. An interesting example of  
684 natural resistance occurs in dwarf pigs.<sup>205</sup> In these animals, *B. anthracis* spores do not germinate  
685 and are cleared within 24 hours of exposure. The majority of information and data that is known  
686 about the pathogenesis and course of disease has been gleaned from laboratory animals and  
687 human case reports. Although not every animal model perfectly correlates with the disease as

688 seen in humans, for the most part it is assumed that the behavior of *B. anthracis* and the  
689 pathology of anthrax is the same between humans and animals.

### 690 **Anthrax in Animals**

691 Naturally occurring anthrax is by and large a disease of herbivores that become exposed  
692 to *B. anthracis* spores while grazing low forage over contaminated soils. Other sources of  
693 transmission include fodder grown on contaminated soils, bone meal, protein concentrates, and  
694 blood, discharge or excreta from other infected animals. Spread of the organism can be  
695 accomplished by water, insects, or scavengers. Insects have been demonstrated to transmit *B.*  
696 *anthracis* experimentally, but natural transmission through vectors has not been documented.<sup>206</sup>  
697 An exception to this is in tabanid flies where transmission is mechanical only.<sup>207</sup> These  
698 infections have resulted in local or cutaneous anthrax.

699

### 700 **Ruminants**

701 In cattle only two forms of anthrax occur, the peracute and the acute. Peracute anthrax is  
702 characterized by sudden death without premonitory signs. The course of the disease is probably  
703 on a few hours. If clinical signs are observed, they are non-specific in nature and include fever,  
704 dyspnea, and muscle tremors. Following death, frank blood is discharged from external orifices.  
705 The acute form of the disease is characterized by initial clinical signs of fever, severe depression,  
706 occasionally a brief period of nervousness, followed by colic, dyspnea, tachycardia, congested or  
707 hemorrhagic mucous membranes, anorexia, diarrhea and dysentery.<sup>208</sup> The course of disease  
708 normally lasts less than 48 hours. A subacute form has been described in cattle in tropical areas  
709 that results following infection of oropharyngeal wounds and involves clinical signs of

710 submandibular edema. In each case septicemia with massive invasion of all tissues and  
711 overwhelming toxemia is the cause of death. Pregnant animals may abort. In these cases, *B.*  
712 *anthracis* can be isolated from fetal tissue. *B. anthracis* does not display any selective tropism  
713 for reproductive tissue, more likely extension of the infection to the reproductive tract occurs  
714 along with the massive tissue invasion seen in other organ systems.

#### 715 **Horses**

716 Anthrax in horses is always acute and the most common manifestation of disease centers  
717 on the intestinal tract. Following germination of *B. anthracis* spores in the intestinal tract, severe  
718 enteritis and colitis precede septicemia and result in clinical signs such as colic, diarrhea, fever,  
719 and depression. The course is usually less than 96 hours from exposure to death. A localized  
720 form has been observed in association with tabanid flies which serve as mechanical vectors. In  
721 these cases infection is peripheral and results in painful, subcutaneous edema. Dependent edema  
722 can develop in the ventral thorax, abdomen and limbs. These cutaneous lesions are seen most  
723 frequently in the neck region.

#### 724 **Pigs**

725 Oropharyngeal involvement with swelling of the head and the head and neck is the most  
726 common presentation in swine.<sup>209</sup> In more severe cases, there is fever, depression, and anorexia.  
727 Petechial hemorrhages may be present in the skin and mucosa. If these disease extends to caudal  
728 portions of the gastrointestinal tract animals may present with dysentery. A pulmonary form of  
729 the disease has been observed in neonatal pigs following inhalation of contaminated dust. Lobar  
730 pneumonia and exudative pleuritis was characteristic in the single report.

#### 731 **Companion Animals**

732           The morbidity and mortality in dogs and cats is much less than that seen in other  
733 domestic species. Various reports indicate that dogs and cats may not develop infection or  
734 remain asymptomatic following exposure to *B. anthracis*. Naturally occurring anthrax in free-  
735 roaming, captive, or domestics canids or felids is most commonly gastrointestinal in origin, the  
736 result of ingestion of meat from infected carcasses. Clinical presentation includes fever,  
737 depression, and anorexia as well as local signs of inflammation, edema, and necrosis in the upper  
738 gastrointestinal tract. Severe gastroenteritis can spread to local lymphatic organs and lead to  
739 fulminant septicemia and death. Experimental inhalational exposure in dogs did not reliably  
740 produce clinical disease other than short-term fever and anorexia.<sup>210</sup>  
741

742 **Anthrax in Humans**

743 **Cutaneous Anthrax**

744 Cutaneous anthrax accounts for an estimated 95% of all naturally acquired human cases  
745 with an estimated annual occurrence of 2000 cases worldwide.<sup>211</sup> There were 224 cases in the US  
746 during a 50 year time period from 1944 to 1994.<sup>212</sup> *B. anthracis* is not invasive and cutaneous  
747 anthrax only develops when spores passively enter breaks in the skin.<sup>213,214</sup> Areas of skin that are  
748 most exposed such as the head, neck, and arms are at greater risk of infection. Once the spores  
749 breach the skin, clinical signs commonly develop within 72 hours however in a few cases onset  
750 of clinical symptoms was extended beyond 14 days. Prolonged latency of spores does not appear  
751 to occur. Germination and toxin production is rapidly initiated once the spore gains access to the  
752 subcutaneous tissue.

753 The first clinical symptom is local edema around the site of infection within 24 hours of  
754 germination of the spores. Small, pruritic macules or papules develop shortly following these  
755 signs and within 48 hours these lesions enlarge, ulcerate and begin to discharge clear to  
756 serosanguinous fluid. Gram stain of the discharge reveals teems of *B. anthracis* vegetative cells.  
757 Following ulceration, the lesion desiccates and develops into an eschar. Extensive local and  
758 regional edema may persist, but pain and the presence of purulent discharge is absent. By 7-10  
759 days the eschar becomes thick and adherent and eventually loosens and falls away. In many  
760 cases, the organisms remain localized to the original lesions and the infection is self-limiting.  
761 The development of severe local edema permits systemic extension of the infection via  
762 lymphatic circulation.<sup>215</sup> In untreated cases, mortality rate may reach up to 20%.<sup>216</sup>

763

764 **Gastrointestinal Anthrax**

765           Gastrointestinal (GI) anthrax results from the ingestion of spores which then germinate in  
766 the upper and lower intestinal tract. Humans most commonly contract gastrointestinal anthrax  
767 after consumption of contaminated undercooked meat. The WHO estimates that 1 case of  
768 gastrointestinal anthrax occurs annually for every 30-60 anthrax-infected carcasses consumed.<sup>217</sup>  
769 In light of the rapid transit time of the human gastrointestinal tract, some have hypothesized that  
770 *B. anthracis* spores would not have sufficient time in which to germinate before elimination from  
771 the body. However another hypothesis may be that the apparent infectious dose for GI anthrax is  
772 higher than was previously regarded.

773           There are many attributes of GI anthrax that are poorly understood compared to the  
774 inhalational and cutaneous forms of the disease. The incidence of the disease is unknown due to  
775 under reporting in the rural areas where it is more prevalent. Large human epidemics have been  
776 recorded in Africa and Asia and have been linked to concurrent widespread livestock epidemics  
777 and consumption of contaminated meat.<sup>18,211,218</sup> Little information is available about the risk of  
778 others source of transmission such as contamination of water or other food sources.

779           Consumed *B. anthracis* vegetative cells can create more proximal lesions in the oral  
780 cavity, causing the oral-pharyngeal form of the disease. Spores more frequently induce disease  
781 after germination further distally the intestinal tract. Based on extrapolated data from challenge  
782 trials in non-human primates the infectious dose is estimated to be at least 10<sup>8</sup> spores.<sup>219</sup> Oral-  
783 pharyngeal infections manifest as ulcers in the mouth and proximal esophagus. Later  
784 manifestations include lymphadenopathy and edema of the head and neck. Some of these  
785 infections will progress to systemic infection and sepsis without intervention.<sup>18,220</sup> Few reports



786 documenting oral-pharyngeal anthrax exist. One case study involving twenty-four cases occurred  
787 in Thailand in 1983.<sup>220</sup> Oral lesions were located on the tonsils in 72% of these cases, 85% of  
788 these were unilateral. The evolution of these lesions began with early edematous and congested  
789 lesions that developed central necrotic areas containing a whitish plaque or pseudomembrane in  
790 7-14 days. Neck swelling was present in all cases, and submandibular lymph nodes measuring up  
791 to 4 cm were noted. Airway obstruction was the only complicating sequelae of infection. The  
792 incubation period was approximately 42 hours. The mean interval from the onset of clinical  
793 symptoms was 3.5 days and the average hospital stay was 7 days. The estimated mortality rate  
794 was 12.5% during this epidemic.

795         The intestinal form results from *B. anthracis* infection of the mucosa of the small and  
796 large intestine.<sup>221,222</sup> In a point source epidemic in Uganda, 155 villagers fell ill after consuming  
797 meat from a zebu that was infected with anthrax. Within 15-72 hours, 143 (92%) of the affected  
798 people developed anthrax. Of these, 91 % had gastrointestinal complaints, 9% oropharyngeal  
799 edema. Nine fatalities resulted from this outbreak, all were children.<sup>223</sup> The mean time to death in  
800 these children was 48 hours after onset of clinical symptoms. The primary lesion of intestinal  
801 anthrax is ulceration of the intestinal mucosa, principally the ileum and cecum.<sup>224</sup> Initial  
802 symptoms include a vague influenza like presentation of nausea, anorexia, vomiting and fever.  
803 This progresses within 12 – 24 hours to severe abdominal pain, hematemesis, melena and/or  
804 bloody diarrhea.<sup>223</sup> The abdominal pain may be so severe that the patient presents with signs of  
805 acute abdomen.<sup>225</sup> The pain may resolve as ascites of large volume develops.

806         Imaging techniques such abdominal radiographs or computed tomography provides only  
807 non-descriptive findings including gaseous distention and evidence of ascites. Exploratory

808 surgery may reveal mesenteric adenopathy, serosanguinous to hemorrhagic ascites, and mucosal  
809 ulceration, edema and necrosis.<sup>226-229</sup> Advanced infections rapidly spread systemically resulting  
810 in septicemia and toxic shock. *B. anthracis* has been isolated in the feces of infected individuals,  
811 but is too inconsistent to serve as an effective means of diagnosis.<sup>230</sup> A higher diagnostic  
812 sensitivity can be obtained from samples of peritoneal fluid and blood for culture.<sup>231</sup>

### 813 **Inhalational Anthrax**

814 Inhalational anthrax develops following the deposition of *B. anthracis* spores into the  
815 alveolar space. It is the rarest form of naturally occurring anthrax, yet is associated with the  
816 highest mortality rate. Because of the dynamics of air flow into the respiratory tract spores must  
817 be within 1.5 -5 um in order to reach the lower respiratory tract. Spores greater than 5 um are  
818 trapped in the upper respiratory tract and effectively cleared by the mucocilliary apparatus.  
819 Smaller spores never leave suspension and easily exhaled out of the respiratory tract. The most  
820 common source of natural transmission is via contact with infected hides, pelts or fleece. A  
821 recent incident of naturally occurring inhalational anthrax occurred in New York where a man  
822 became exposed through working with untreated hides used for making drums .<sup>232</sup> Prior to the  
823 2001 attacks, a total of 18 cases of inhalational anthrax had been reported in the United States  
824 since 1901.<sup>16</sup> The United States Department of Defense estimates the LD<sub>50</sub> dose is between  
825 8,000-10,000 spores.<sup>233</sup>

826 The incubation period from germination to the onset of symptoms lasts up to 6 days. The  
827 first stages manifest with non-specific symptoms such as fever, malaise, shortness of breath,  
828 chest pain and nausea for an average of 4 days. Often there is a transient improvement in

829 symptomology lasting less than 24 hours before the second phase begins. Some cases progress  
830 from the first phase directly into fulminant disease.

831         Massive vegetative proliferation precedes the second phase of inhalational anthrax. An  
832 explosion of bacterial replication and toxin production overwhelms local innate defenses in the  
833 tracheobronchial and mediastinal lymph nodes and leads to lymphadenopathy, edema,  
834 hemorrhage and necrosis. The second phase is reported to begin abruptly in most cases with  
835 sudden fever, diaphoresis, and dyspnea. The most dramatic development in this phase is the  
836 massive hemorrhagic mediastinitis. Damaged endothelium within mediastinal vessels permits the  
837 sudden efflux of hemorrhage and pleural effusion into the mediastinal space. Thoracic imaging  
838 can be helpful in early diagnosis if the attending physician is aware of the characteristic  
839 mediastinal widening in cases of inhalational anthrax. All 11 patients from 2001 attacks had  
840 abnormal thoracic radiographs: 7 individuals displayed widening of the mediastinum widening; 7  
841 had evidence of pulmonary cellular infiltrates; and 8 had pleural effusion. The widening of the  
842 mediastinum and lymphadenopathy resulted in remarkable stridor in a few cases.<sup>234,235</sup>  
843 Respiration is profoundly affected late in the progression of disease. Cardiovascular collapse  
844 leads to shock and death within hours of the onset of fulminant disease, in some cases regardless  
845 of prompt appropriate treatment.<sup>216,233,236</sup>

#### 846 **Molecular Events during Progression of Systemic Anthrax**

847         Macrophages play a critical role in systemic anthrax infection by serving as the primary  
848 site of spore germination. Germination of spores within phagocytic vesicles can take several  
849 hours to complete.<sup>237</sup> In that time frame, the activated macrophages have begun to home toward  
850 regional lymph centers.<sup>238</sup> This is the basis for the popular theory of systemic dissemination of *B.*

851 *anthracis* using macrophages as “Trojan Horses” to deliver the pathogen to centralized lymph  
852 tissue.<sup>239</sup> In addition, throughout infection macrophages are the primary target of edema and  
853 lethal toxin. By targeting macrophages, *B. anthracis* indirectly manipulates the host immune  
854 system and creates an environment that favors its survival. The early events of systemic anthrax  
855 infection have been best characterized for inhalational anthrax, particularly in the context of the  
856 interaction between *B. anthracis* and the pulmonary macrophage.<sup>240</sup> As result inhalational  
857 anthrax provides a model for the progression of the disease from which overarching themes have  
858 been applied to the other forms of the disease.

859         Once in the alveoli, spores are phagocytized by regional innate immune cells and  
860 transported to lymph nodes.<sup>241</sup> Alveolar macrophages are the innate immune effector cell in the  
861 lungs.<sup>242</sup> Dendritic cells play an important role in the early uptake and have been shown to be  
862 more efficient in phagocytosis of spores but because of fewer cell numbers may not contribute  
863 greatly to dissemination.<sup>207</sup> Fibroblasts and epithelial cells have been shown *in vitro* to  
864 participate in the phagocytosis of *B. anthracis* spores but their contribution to the dissemination  
865 and the pathophysiology of the disease is not known.<sup>243,244</sup> Despite the permissibility of these  
866 other cell types, it appears alveolar macrophages are the principal location for spore  
867 germination.<sup>237,245-247</sup> Spores germinate in the phago-lysosome while in transport from the lungs  
868 to mediastinal lymph nodes.<sup>239</sup> Both the lung dendritic cell and the pulmonary macrophage  
869 demonstrate sporicidal activity *in vitro*, which likely accounts for a 10-fold reduction in viable  
870 colony forming units within the first 2.5 hours following challenge of the cells. The roughly 10%  
871 of spores that do persist then rapidly multiply and overwhelm the macrophage eventually

872 inducing cell death. Based on more recent *in vivo* imaging studies, there appears to be limited  
873 germination of cells within the parenchyma of the lung.<sup>248</sup>

874 Both the vegetative cell and spore of *B. anthracis* are capable of stimulating a strong  
875 innate inflammatory response. Many motifs in both phases are recognized by host pattern  
876 recognition receptors. The components of the cell wall including lipoteichoic acid and teichoic  
877 acid stimulate TLR2 receptors.<sup>249</sup> Anthrolysin O stimulates TLR4 receptors.<sup>249</sup> Upon  
878 phagocytosis of spores activated pulmonary macrophages and dendritic cells release several pro-  
879 inflammatory cytokines.<sup>247,257</sup> In A/J strain mice as little as 100 spores by intranasal challenge  
880 elicited a potent IL-1b response.<sup>240</sup> IL-1b and TNF-a recruit and activate phagocytes and promote  
881 clearance of un-germinated spores from the alveoli.<sup>250</sup> Mutation of the NF-kappa B gene, master  
882 regulator for cytokine expression significantly increased the susceptibility of mouse macrophage  
883 cells.<sup>251,252</sup> In spite of this strong response during systemic infection, fully virulent *B. anthracis*  
884 quickly begins to counter host defenses as soon as germination is complete and the production of  
885 virulence factors begins.

886 Some vegetative cells will escape the lysosome and be into circulation or into the  
887 mediastinal lymph nodes.<sup>239,253</sup> Once the vegetative cells begin actively dividing *B. anthracis*  
888 begins to express the capsule and toxin proteins. Messenger RNA transcripts for PA, LF and EF  
889 appear within 1 hour of infection.<sup>254</sup> This equates with approximately the time period when spore-  
890 laden macrophages arrive in regional lymph nodes in the guinea pigs.<sup>253,255</sup> A single putative 'escape'  
891 gene located on the pXO1 plasmid appears to be necessary for lysis and release of the organism from  
892 the macrophage.<sup>239</sup>

893 Four hours after challenge vegetative cells and spores were found in the peri-bronchiolar and  
894 mediastinal lymph nodes in guinea pigs.<sup>255</sup> In non-human primates this process requires a longer  
895 period, up to 18 hours after infection before bacterial cells were isolated from the mediastinal lymph  
896 nodes.<sup>255</sup> Following lysis and release into the nodes the bacteria begin to rapidly divide and produce  
897 toxin. Though surrounded by activated immune cells the toxins limit any further immune activation.

898 Immunosuppression can be identified early in the infectious process in some species soon  
899 after initial phagocytosis. Lethal toxin abolishes the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines in  
900 cultured macrophages and dendritic cells.<sup>156,256-258</sup> Lethal toxin can also activate cellular apoptosis  
901 through disruption of the p38 MAPK system.<sup>163</sup> Edema toxin works in conjunction with lethal toxin  
902 to suppress early cytokine responses of other professional phagocytic cells, principally neutrophils.  
903 The combination of toxins also inhibits neutrophil activation, chemotaxis, interferon production and  
904 the production of NO.<sup>259</sup> Administration of exogenous interferon abrogates the activation of  
905 apoptosis in macrophages and improves sporicidal activity.<sup>259</sup> Lethal toxin also targets phospholipase  
906 A2 in alveolar macrophages which is known to assist in destruction of spores.<sup>260</sup> Finally, lethal toxin  
907 interrupts differentiation of peripheral monocytes into activate tissue macrophages thereby reducing  
908 the number of effector cells and promoting bacterial persistence.<sup>261</sup>

909 In addition to suppression of the innate immune response, the toxins demonstrate suppressive  
910 effects on the adaptive immune response as well. Lethal toxin was demonstrated to reduce the  
911 expression and localization of co-receptors on antigen presenting cells leading to reduced  
912 lymphocyte activation and the development of tolerance.<sup>258</sup> Lethal and edema toxin together reduce T  
913 cell activation and proliferation by reducing IL-2 secretion.<sup>166,262</sup> Lethal toxin inhibits the humoral  
914 immune response by interfering with B cell activation and MKK expression and reducing IgM  
915 production.<sup>258,263</sup> Increased levels of cAMP via exposure to edema toxin forces maturation of T cells

916 toward a Th2 response, theoretically a less effective immune response against bacterial pathogens.  
917 <sup>166,255,264</sup>

918           This cycle of lysis and release, bacterial division, greater recruitment of immune cells into the  
919 lymph node and immune cell death leads to swelling of the node and escape of the pathogen into the  
920 bloodstream. *B. anthracis* also passively travels through the lymph to reach adjacent nodes. In the  
921 blood, the bacterium replicates unchecked resulting in severe bacteremia and toxemia. Not all  
922 immune cells are susceptible to toxin-induced cytopathology, but the capsule also defends the  
923 bacterium from phagocytosis and complement mediated lysis. <sup>41,265</sup>

924           The last stage of the disease is induced by the consequences of systemic toxemia and usually  
925 begins 12-24 hours after vascular dissemination. Exposure of the toxins to cells of the cardiovascular  
926 system results in hemorrhage, clotting disorders, edema and ultimately multi-organ dysfunction and  
927 failure. Lethal toxin attacks endothelial cells and induces capillary permeability by rearranging  
928 central actin fibers and endothelial structure. <sup>150,153,255</sup> Due to this manipulation, endothelial cells  
929 suffer apoptosis or lysis. The severe damage wrought on the endothelium leads to disseminated  
930 intravascular coagulation and the characteristic bleeding classically associated with anthrax  
931 infections. <sup>266-268</sup> Edema toxin alone is lethal to zebra fish and some in bred strains of mice. <sup>149,150,269</sup>  
932 Disruption of cellular homeostasis, swelling and necrosis of cardiac pacemaker cells induced death in  
933 mice after intravenous infusion of edema toxin. <sup>151,280</sup> As previously stated, anthrolysin O is  
934 considered a hemolysin and actively destroys red cells. <sup>270</sup> Both toxins have been linked to platelet  
935 activation and disruption of the clotting cascade. The overall toxin effect on platelet function leads to  
936 more severe bleeding and vascular leakage. <sup>269,271</sup> This massive vascular leakage leads to pooling of  
937 fluid in the pleural and peritoneal cavity. As the pleural effusion accumulates, affected hosts  
938 experience shortness of breath, impaired ventilation and ultimately asphyxia. At the climax of

939 systemic infection resources and nutrients become limited forcing the vegetative cells in stationary  
940 phase growth and initiating the cascade of signals for sporulation. After death of the host autolysis  
941 exposes the tissues to higher oxygen concentration and stimulates the bacilli to complete sporulation.  
942 This concludes the infection cycle and leaves spores in the environment ready for the next host.

## 943 **Treatment**

### 944 **Antimicrobial Susceptibility of *B. anthracis***

945 Most field isolates of *B. anthracis* display susceptibility to penicillin. Because of its  
946 inexpensiveness and ready availability, the WHO continues to recommend penicillin based  
947 treatment regimens for naturally acquired cases in developing countries. Novel strains isolated  
948 from naturally acquired cases consistently remain sensitive to  $\beta$ -Lactam antibiotics. In Western  
949 nations current recommended therapy consists of a fluorinated quinolone or doxycycline alone or  
950 in combination with an additional antimicrobial that the isolate may be susceptible to.<sup>272</sup> Recent  
951 findings have established that *B. anthracis* also displays *in vitro* sensitivity to numerous other  
952 antimicrobial classes including glycopeptides such as vancomycin, macrolides, rifampin,  
953 fluorinated quinolones and most 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> generation cephalosporins. Resistance or  
954 intermediate susceptibility to sulfonimides and earlier generation cephalosporins has also been  
955 consistently documented.<sup>273</sup>

956 Puromycin, an antimicrobial drug from which clindamycin was later derived has been  
957 proposed to have particular benefit in the treatment of anthrax on the merit of its ability to limit  
958 protein synthesis and specifically abrogate the synthesis of the toxins.<sup>274</sup> Clindamycin may also  
959 possess a similar ability to limit toxin synthesis based on clinical findings in toxic shock  
960 syndrome produced by streptococcal infections.<sup>275</sup> No efficacy data has confirmed this effect in



961 anthrax. Brook *et al.* demonstrated that clindamycin in combination with ciprofloxacin was  
962 successful in improving the survival of mice challenged with gamma-irradiated spores of *B.*  
963 *anthracis*.<sup>276</sup>

964 Stepanov *et al.* reported induced resistance in a strain of *B. anthracis* to penicillin,  
965 tetracycline, rifampicin, chlormaphenicol, erythromycin and lincomycin through the introduction  
966 of a recombinant pTEC plasmid.<sup>277</sup> This finding compelled the Center for Civilian Biodefense  
967 Strategies to publish recommendations that ciprofloxacin or other fluorinated quinolones should  
968 be the antimicrobial drug of choice in adults and children with inhalational anthrax.<sup>278</sup> They  
969 advise that clinicians should assume penicillin- and tetracycline-class resistance in any isolate of  
970 *B. anthracis* associated intentional release until sensitivity testing demonstrates otherwise.

971 Shortly following the publication of these recommendations, a study demonstrated the  
972 development of *in vitro* resistance of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain to ofloxacin through the relatively  
973 simple method of sub-culturing the bacterium through multiple passages in the presence of the  
974 antibiotic.<sup>279</sup>

975 Lincoln *et al.* in early animal studies found that chloramphenicol was not effective in the  
976 treatment of systemic anthrax in mice or monkeys.<sup>280</sup> Moreover, due to chloramphenicol's  
977 bacteriostatic nature, others have reported that some strains of *B. anthracis* were found to be  
978 resistant to the drug.<sup>281</sup> Chloramphenicol has the potential for serious side-effects on bone  
979 marrow. Given its safety profile and the lack of therapeutic evidence from animal studies, most  
980 health officials have recommended seeking other alternatives.<sup>282</sup>

981 After the 2001 anthrax attack on the United States, the Center for Disease Control and  
982 Prevention released guidelines advocating the use of combination therapy (preferably 2 or 3 anti-

983 microbial agents) selected on the basis of susceptibility testing. Treatment outcomes from a  
984 retrospective case study of the 2001 attack indicate that the intravenous administration of 2 or  
985 more antibiotics active against *B. anthracis* resulted in a greater chance of survival.<sup>14</sup> In that  
986 study, only 10 cases were analyzed. To date no animal challenge studies have evaluated the  
987 effect of multiple therapies on treatment outcomes. Therefore, it remains unclear if  
988 combinational therapy truly provides a survival advantage but, the gravity of these infections  
989 may overrule empirical evidence.

### 990 **Recommended Antimicrobial Therapy**

991 For uncomplicated cases of cutaneous anthrax the recommended course of therapy is  
992 parenteral penicillin.<sup>206</sup> Alternative therapy includes oral penicillin or amoxicillin. Under these  
993 treatment regimens the bacterium is cleared from cutaneous lesions within the first 24 hours. The  
994 secondary signs of edema, erythema, and swelling subside within 24 – 48 hours. Prompt  
995 antimicrobial therapy does limit the size of the lesion, but does not affect the evolutionary stages  
996 it must go through.<sup>283</sup>

997 In individuals exhibiting signs of systemic involvement intravenous antibiotic therapy is  
998 recommended. Given the rapid of onset of disease in these cases prompt antibiotic administration  
999 is essential. Delaying therapy for patients with anthrax infection has been shown to decrease the  
1000 chances for survival.<sup>284,285</sup> Diagnostic testing that is sensitive, specific and rapid is limited.  
1001 Therefore all persons considered at high risk for anthrax exposure and displaying symptoms of  
1002 fever or evidence of systemic disease should prophylactically receive antibiotic treatment for  
1003 potential anthrax while awaiting definitive diagnosis. Recommended combinations for  
1004 inhalational or gastrointestinal anthrax include doxycycline, ciprofloxacin, penicillin,

1005 clindamycin or clarithromycin. In the treatment of gastrointestinal anthrax in non-human  
1006 primates, the combination of penicillin and streptomycin has shown synergistic properties.<sup>280</sup>  
1007 Ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin have yielded clinical success in numerous animal studies.<sup>286,287</sup>

1008         A sequela to systemic anthrax is the development of meningoen­cephalitis. This  
1009 complication is considered rare but is associated with a nearly universal mortality rate.  
1010 Retrospective case analysis indicates an intravenous dose of 20 – 24 million units/day was  
1011 correlated with survival. The most effective adjunctive antimicrobial agent identified in these  
1012 studies appears to be intravenously administered rifampicin at 600-1200 mg/day.<sup>282,288</sup> These  
1013 drugs are synergistic in activity against *B. anthracis* and possess favorable penetration into the  
1014 central nervous system. Vancomycin has also been recommended in the treatment of  
1015 meningoen­cephalitis, but due to its extreme cost is infrequently administered.<sup>282</sup> Though  
1016 doxycycline has been shown to have high penetration in other tissues, drug concentrations in the  
1017 cerebral spinal fluid are below the minimum inhibitory concentrations for *B. anthracis*.<sup>288</sup>  
1018 Lessons from the few reported instances of survival in cases of anthrax meningoen­cephalitis  
1019 suggest the dose of intravenous administered penicillin G should approach 20 – 24 million units  
1020 /day.

1021         Treatment failure rate reported in 4 independent case series was approximately 96% or 45  
1022 of 47 cases.<sup>289-291</sup> Delayed diagnosis due to suspicion of more prevalent diseases with neurologic  
1023 presentations was considered a significant factor in the outcome of these cases by one author.<sup>291</sup>  
1024 In addition to early diagnosis and antimicrobial therapy, supportive care is very critical in these  
1025 cases. Critical supportive therapy that is recommended includes ventilator support, ongoing

1026 correction of fluid and electrolyte imbalances, and treatments to resolve cerebral edema and  
1027 inflammation.

1028         The *B. anthracis* Ames strain isolate used in the 2001 attacks displayed the typical  
1029 sensitivity profile of naturally occurring strains. However, the isolate did possess two resistance  
1030 factors; an inducible  $\beta$ -lactamase and a constitutive cephalosporinase. It's unclear what benefit  
1031 these enzymes provided the bacterium because the isolate demonstrated a high susceptibility to  
1032 penicillin *in vitro*.<sup>292</sup> None the less, due to the potential for resistance in overwhelming infectious  
1033 burdens the CDC advises avoiding penicillin as the sole treatment of inhalational anthrax and  
1034 reconfirms ciprofloxacin and/or doxycycline as mainline therapies.<sup>293</sup>

1035         In controlled causality settings following intentional release (situations where a small  
1036 number of patients require therapy), the CDC recommends initial intravenous ciprofloxacin  
1037 followed by a transition to oral ciprofloxacin or doxycycline as the patient stabilizes. In the event  
1038 of a bioterrorist attack where the number of individuals requiring treatment is high creating an  
1039 environment where intravenous antibiotic therapy may no longer be logistically feasible the CDC  
1040 advises the use of oral ciprofloxacin or doxycycline to all exposed individuals. The CDC also  
1041 advises prolonged courses of antibiotics (at least 60 days post-exposure) based on the findings of  
1042 two studies that demonstrated antibiotic therapy in experimentally infected animals inhibited the  
1043 development of an immune response.<sup>293-295</sup> The mechanism of inhibition was not clear in those  
1044 studies but it suggests that individuals harboring un-germinated spores beyond the duration of  
1045 treatment may remain at risk of infection.

1046         Pediatric cases of anthrax and the treatment of pregnant women require careful  
1047 consideration of adverse and teratogenic effects of some antimicrobial agents. In young animals,

1048 ciprofloxacin has been associated with arthropathy and the development of cartilage defects in  
1049 large weight bearing joints.<sup>296</sup> In spite of this potential concern, the United States Working  
1050 Group on Civilian Biodefense believes the risk of catastrophic infection outweigh the risk of  
1051 joint disease and recommends the use of ciprofloxacin in acute anthrax children. Doxycycline is  
1052 also not generally recommended for children less than 8 years of age due to the adverse effects  
1053 of enamel staining and inhibition of bone growth.<sup>297</sup> For less severe cases of anthrax in children  
1054 penicillin is the treatment of choice at the recommended pediatric dosage.

1055         The literature bears no clear recommendation concerning the duration of antimicrobial  
1056 treatment in all forms of anthrax. Ellingson *et al.* demonstrated that *B. anthracis* cutaneous  
1057 lesions were bacteriologically cleared within 24 – 48 hours of treatment.<sup>298</sup> During an outbreak  
1058 in Zimbabwe, treatment antibiotic therapy beyond 4 days provided no benefit in outcomes.<sup>299</sup> In  
1059 a large case report from Ethiopia, a single intramuscular dose of penicillin resulted in the early  
1060 discharge of 99 out of 100 patients. Of these 99, 5 patients experienced progression of the lesion  
1061 and required subsequent follow up and continuation of care.<sup>300</sup> Many physicians have adopted an  
1062 empirical regimen of a minimum 7 – 14 days of care.

1063         There are no FDA-approved compounds or treatment regimens for the post-exposure  
1064 prophylaxis of anthrax. Therefore, recommendations for post-exposure prophylaxis are based  
1065 entirely on the strategies derived for the treatment of anthrax in mass casualty settings. This  
1066 includes antibiotic therapy for a minimum of 60 days following spore exposure.<sup>293</sup> These  
1067 guidelines were put into practice following the 2001 attack when over 10,000 US postal workers  
1068 were potentially exposed. These individuals were provided 60 days of ciprofloxacin or  
1069 doxycycline for anthrax prophylaxis. Approximately 2% of these individuals sought medical care

1070 for possible adverse effects associated to the medication, but none presented with clinical  
1071 symptoms typical of anthrax.<sup>301</sup> A retrospective survey including over 6,000 of the individuals  
1072 provided prophylaxis revealed that less than 45% followed the prophylaxis protocol to its  
1073 completion. Commonly cited reasons for not finishing the therapy included gastrointestinal upset  
1074 or other adverse reactions, forgetting to take the medication daily, and belief that there was ever  
1075 any real risk of contracting the disease.<sup>302,303</sup>

## 1076 **Supportive Care**

1077 In animal models, physiologic sequelae of severe anthrax infection have included  
1078 aberrations in calcium, glucose, acid-base, and potassium regulation as well as respiratory and  
1079 cardiovascular collapse.<sup>150,304</sup> This suggests that beyond rapid antibiotic administration,  
1080 mitigation of the effects of systemic toxemia might improve survival if homeostasis can be  
1081 successfully resurrected. Supportive measures would ostensibly include balanced intravenous  
1082 fluids, correction of acid-base disturbances, maintenance of appropriate blood glucose  
1083 concentrations, early ventilatory support and administration of vasopressors. In a rat lethal toxin  
1084 constant rate infusion model, volume support through crystalloid infusion was shown to decrease  
1085 the mortality associated with the disease.<sup>305</sup> In a similar study model, vasopressors had no effect  
1086 on mortality.<sup>306</sup> Of the 22 cases following the 2001 attacks the first 11 presented with severe  
1087 pleural effusion.<sup>272,307</sup> Seven of these individuals required drainage of the thoracic cavity during  
1088 the course of therapy and 3 required the placement of chest tubes.<sup>272</sup> Glucocorticoid therapy was  
1089 found to possess potentially detrimental effects by upsetting the balance of endocrine function  
1090 and possibly sensitizing susceptible mice to lethal toxin.<sup>308</sup> Turnbull suggested that  
1091 corticosteroids should be of little value in light of the anti-inflammatory effects of edema

1092 factor.<sup>217</sup> The literature in this area is inconclusive as to the real benefits of corticosteroid with  
1093 some retrospective case studies revealing a treatment effect while others have found none.<sup>299</sup> In  
1094 well controlled experimental studies with non-human primates hydrocortisone, did have a  
1095 statistically significant effect on treatment outcomes.<sup>280</sup> As alluded to previously there does  
1096 appear to be a beneficial effect of dexamethasone in the treatment of anthrax  
1097 meningoencephalitis potentially by reducing cerebral edema due to its increased volume of  
1098 distribution and levels obtained in the brain, but it is difficult to fully substantiate that  
1099 recommendation due to a lack of clinical data.<sup>289</sup>

### 1100 **Alternative Therapies for Anthrax**

1101         Appropriate antimicrobial therapy does not always ensure successful treatment of severe  
1102 anthrax due to the continued deleterious effects of the toxins despite elimination of the  
1103 bacteremia. This was first identified in rabbits experimentally infected with the Vollorum strain  
1104 of *B. anthracis*.<sup>309</sup> In that study, antibiotic therapy initiated late in the course of disease, while  
1105 effective in eliminating the bacterium from tissue, failed to halt the progression of disease. A  
1106 retrospective systematic review of cases of human inhalational anthrax evaluated the effect of  
1107 timing of antimicrobial therapy and the ensuing clinical response.<sup>310</sup> When antimicrobial therapy  
1108 was administered to individuals during the prodromal stage, there appeared to be a prolongation  
1109 of that stage from a mean 4.1 days to 5.8 days. Individuals who were treated with antimicrobials  
1110 or anti-anthrax antiserum during the prodromal phase were less likely to die than those  
1111 individuals receiving treatment during the fulminant phase or no therapy at all.<sup>310,311</sup> These  
1112 studies underscore the importance of early antibiotic therapy and illustrate a need for adjunctive  
1113 therapeutics targeting lethal and edema toxin.

1114 A large number of drugs approved for use in humans display efficacy against one or both  
1115 of the anthrax toxins under experimental conditions. To date most have been studied in *in vitro*  
1116 pathogenesis models not therapeutic models. Two calcium channel blockers, verapamil and  
1117 nifedipine, block the effects of both toxins by limiting the intracellular availability of calcium.<sup>312</sup>  
1118 Dantrolene, a post synaptic muscle relaxant, and quinacrine, an antimalarial agent, also reduce  
1119 calcium availability for interaction to lethal toxin through blockades of calcium release for  
1120 cytosolic stores and phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> activity, respectively.<sup>313,314</sup> Neomycin and protamine  
1121 inhibited the activity of lethal toxin through competitive inhibition of common binding sites on  
1122 mitogen activated kinase kinase.<sup>315,316</sup> Adefovir, an antiviral agent used in the treatment of  
1123 hepatitis B was shown to inhibit the activity of edema toxin through its binding of the enzymes  
1124 catalytic site.<sup>317</sup> The statins simvastatin and fluvastatin reduced lethal toxin activity by preventing  
1125 Rho GTPase activity from trafficking lethal toxin throughout the cell.<sup>318</sup>

1126 The available *in vivo* activity of efficacious compounds is very limited. Amiodarone and  
1127 niclosamide, an anti-arryhtmic and anthelmintic respectively, enhanced survival of rats and mice  
1128 intoxicated with lethal toxin by raising the endosomal pH and preventing dissociation of the PA  
1129 heptameric pore from its receptor thereby preventing cellular entry of the toxins.<sup>319,320</sup> N-acetyl-  
1130 cystine and the antineoplastic agent cisplatin both improved survivability of Balb/C mice  
1131 following a challenge through distinct, downstream events in the lethal toxin  
1132 pathogenesis.<sup>153,321,322</sup> N-acetyl-cystine acts as an antioxidant and abrogates the cytolysis  
1133 produced by reactive oxygen intermediates in way reflective of it use in acetaminophen  
1134 toxicity. Cisplatin displays a dual role in reducing the pathogenesis of lethal toxin by first  
1135 preventing PA from forming a heptemere thereby impacting LF and EF translocation as well as



1136 inhibiting LF cleavage of mitogen activated kinase . Select NSAID agents (indomethacin and  
1137 celecoxib) and mast cell stabilizers (cromolyn) reduced edema toxin morbidity but did not affect  
1138 mortality outcome in rabbits challenged with edema toxin.<sup>334</sup> The proposed mechanism for each  
1139 of these compounds was through a reduction in vascular leakage associated with attenuation of  
1140 edema toxins effects on inflammatory mediators and reduction of mast cell degranulation and  
1141 histamine release.

1142 Chloroquine, a quinidine derivative molecule approved for use against malaria in humans  
1143 has demonstrated effect in reversing the pathogenesis of both toxins. Chloroquine administered  
1144 to mice at clinically relevant doses before and after challenge with lethal toxin a positive effect  
1145 on survival.<sup>323</sup> On cellular level chloroquine reversed cytotoxicity in T cells after exposure to  
1146 lethal toxin. Co-administration of chloroquine and amiodarone or furin protease inhibitors  
1147 produced an additive beneficial effect on T cells.<sup>319,324,325</sup> However, when administered to  
1148 macrophages at the same time as virulent spores the macrophages displayed reduced sporicidal  
1149 effect.<sup>326</sup>

1150 The spectrum of unapproved or experimental compounds with activity against the  
1151 anthrax toxins is extensive. Modification of tetracycline produced the capability to competitively  
1152 inhibit LF cleavage of MAPKK at concentrations similar to those achieved when the same  
1153 compound was administered to participants in a phase I and Phase II human cancer trial.<sup>327</sup> Many  
1154 of these agents display greatest inhibition of LF after the protein has entered the cell. Certain  
1155 polyphenols that can be extracted from green tea stochastically inhibited the proteolytic activity  
1156 of LF in mouse macrophages and protected rats from death after lethal toxin challenge.<sup>328</sup>

1157           Some agents have increased toxicity. Aspirin and other anti-clotting compounds  
1158 increased the mortality of mice after lethal toxin administration and therefore should be avoided  
1159 the treatment of systemic anthrax.<sup>271</sup> The discovery of new small molecular inhibitors of LF is  
1160 complicated. In order to effectively inhibit the metalloproteinase function of LF, these compound  
1161 need to penetrate the cell membrane with high affinity and may inadvertently affect the host  
1162 enzymes. Many candidate compounds showing promise at the foundational level fail to translate  
1163 to clinical efficacy by losing potency under normal physiology conditions. Recently the crystal  
1164 structure of some of basic compounds was resolved which hopefully will inspire the design of  
1165 improved candidates.<sup>329</sup>

1166           Targeting of the cell surface associated furin protease has been a promising target for  
1167 novel therapeutics because of its important role in the proteolytic cleavage of PA following  
1168 initial interaction with its host cell receptors. Furin is a serine protease and is susceptible to  
1169 inhibition by inter-alpha inhibitor proteins.<sup>330</sup> Inter-alpha inhibitor proteins are found at high  
1170 concentrations in human plasma.<sup>331</sup> Their general function is to provide regulation over of a  
1171 broad spectrum of proteases including complement components, granzymes and coagulation and  
1172 fibronlytic enzymes that are typically present in the pro-inflammatory state. The relationship  
1173 between inter-alpha inhibitor proteins and mortality in bacterial sepsis has been the subject of  
1174 several investigations and has the potential to emerge as a therapeutic agent.<sup>332-334</sup> In a study  
1175 where A/J strain mice were intra-nasally challenged with *B. anthracis* Sterne strain, inter-alpha  
1176 inhibitor proteins improved survival compared to controls and appeared to act synergistically  
1177 with anti-microbial therapy.<sup>335</sup> Other protease inhibitors have shown anti-pathogenic potential

1178 through targeting of furin.<sup>336</sup> Alpha antitrypsin blocked furin and inhibited the pathogenic effect  
1179 of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* A exotoxin in cell culture.<sup>337</sup>

1180         Mutant variants of PA monomers constructed to have dominant negative activity function  
1181 as decoys and prevent heptameric prepore formation with native PA.<sup>338,339</sup> Deletion of the 2  $\beta_2$ -2  
1182  $\beta_3$  loop and point mutations in any of three residues, K397, D425, and F427, produce protective  
1183 antigen monomers that co-assemble with wild-type protective antigen monomers and block the  
1184 intracellular delivery of the toxins. These mutant proteins were demonstrated to be very efficient  
1185 in that only one mutant variant within a heptamere of wild-type proteins was necessary to disrupt  
1186 translocation of the toxins. Though the dominant negative variants were protective in a rat lethal  
1187 toxin challenge, their clinical relevance has been called into question due to the timing of  
1188 administration and the likelihood of a positive effect in the typical diagnostic window of  
1189 systemic anthrax.<sup>339</sup>

1190         Another novel antimicrobial approach entails the development of bacteriolytic enzymes  
1191 or lysins derived from double stranded DNA bacteriophages.<sup>340,341</sup> Lysins are enzymes produced  
1192 by lysogenic phages upon exit of the bacterial cells at the end of the viral reproductive cycle.  
1193 These enzymes have narrow host ranges and a high specificity for the host's cell wall  
1194 carbohydrate composition. Investigators used a *B. anthracis* specific  $\gamma$  strain as source of  
1195 recombinant  $\gamma$  lysin.<sup>342</sup> The  $\gamma$  lysin demonstrated a rapid lytic effect when applied to bacterial  
1196 lawns of *B. anthracis*. Administration of the  $\gamma$  lysin to Balb/C mice that had been intra-  
1197 peritoneally challenged with RSVF1, a strain of *Bacillus cereus* that has very high genetic  
1198 homology to most strains of *B. anthracis*, reduced the level of morbidity and improved survival  
1199 rates compared with control animals.<sup>343</sup> Lysin therapy is especially attractive because of the low

1200 level of intrinsic resistance and potential for use in genetically engineered, antibiotic resistant *B.*  
1201 *anthracis* strains.

1202           Disrupting communication between *B. anthracis* bacilli through inhibition of quorum-  
1203 sensing is another potential approach. Quorum-sensing systems are bacterial cell surface  
1204 associated protein complexes that respond to several environmental stimuli, but principally  
1205 intraspecies cell density, by initiating second messenger cascade that eventually modulates gene  
1206 expression.<sup>344</sup> Quorum-sensing systems are very important in the regulation of pathogenesis for  
1207 many bacteria. *B. anthracis* uses a quorum sensing system known as AI-2 that is common to  
1208 other species.<sup>345</sup> Synthetic halogenated furanones have been identified that are competitive  
1209 antagonists of this system.<sup>345,346</sup> An *in vitro* study involving the exposure of *B. anthracis* Sterne  
1210 strain to a naturally occurring AI-2 inhibitor, (5Z)-4-bromo-5-(bromomethylene)-3-butyl-2(5H)-  
1211 furanone (fur-1) derived from *Delisea pulchra* a red marine algae, demonstrated a reduction in  
1212 growth and expression of the *pagA*, *cya*, and *lef* virulence genes.<sup>347</sup>

1213           Knowledge of the amino acid sequence of PA has provided insight into methods of  
1214 disrupting its function. Fang *et al.* produced a recombinant soluble form of tumor endothelial  
1215 marker 8 or ANTXR2 that acts as a receptor decoy inhibitor. If applied in animal therapeutic  
1216 studies these decoys possess the potential to be used as a molecular scrubber to adsorb free form  
1217 PA monomers.<sup>348</sup> The receptor decoy provided protection from the effects of lethal toxin in  
1218 RAW264.7 cells, yet failed to improve survival in rats infused with lethal toxin when fused to  
1219 the F<sub>c</sub> portion of IgG1 to increase its circulation half-life. In a similar study, phage display was  
1220 used to identify small peptide molecules capable of weakly binding the heptameric cell-binding  
1221 subunit of protective antigen.<sup>349</sup> These small peptides, when covalently linked together, as a

1222 polyvalent inhibitor prevented toxin assembly *in vitro*. In lethal toxin studies in rats the  
1223 polyvalent inhibitor delayed the onset of clinical symptoms and reduced lethality.<sup>349</sup>  
1224 *B. anthracis* initiates pathogenesis production immediately following germination.  
1225 Therefore the germination process is an attractive target for agents with the potential to abolish  
1226 this transformation. Inosine, a nucleoside found in high concentrations in tRNA, is a potent  
1227 germinant for *B. anthracis*. As such the chemotherapeutic agent 6-thioguanosin, an inosine  
1228 analog, was shown to be effective in blocking spore germination and cytotoxicity in murine  
1229 macrophages.<sup>350</sup> Other compounds with identified activity against the *B. anthracis* spore include  
1230 components of non-human primate innate immune defensins. In particular compounds known as  
1231 theta-defensins or retrocyclins were investigated and demonstrated that in addition to rendering  
1232 germinating Sterne strain spores non-viable they also blocked the enzymatic activity of lethal  
1233 toxin and protected murine cells from cytotoxicity.<sup>351</sup> Recently, Crawford *et al.* demonstrated the  
1234 sporicidal and antimicrobial activity of murine CXC chemokines CXCL9, CXCL10, and  
1235 CXCL11.<sup>352</sup> A mechanism for this observation was elucidated for CXCL10 through its binding  
1236 and disruption of FtsX, a putative ATP-binding cassette transporter responsible for translocation  
1237 of a wide variety of macromolecules.<sup>353</sup>

1238 One of the most devastating end effects of lethal toxin is the activation of the caspase  
1239 system and induction of apoptosis. Auranofin, an organo-gold compound, blocks the activation  
1240 of caspase-1 and significantly prolonged mean time to death in rats following intoxication.<sup>354</sup>  
1241 Though auranofin is the only caspase inhibitor used against anthrax other inflammasome  
1242 inhibitors have been identified and may have a role in limiting the cellular damage and should be  
1243 investigated.<sup>355</sup>

1244 **Passive Immunotherapy**

1245           In 1901, Emil von Behring received the first Nobel Prize for developing polyclonal  
1246 antibodies (pAbs) and using them as a treatment against diphtheria and tetanus.<sup>356</sup> Around this  
1247 time an Italian protégé of von Behring, Achille Sclavo, began work on developing a donkey  
1248 based antiserum against anthrax to stem the effect the disease was creating in Italy at the time.  
1249 The first report of successful treatment using Sclavo's anti-serum appeared in the *British*  
1250 *Medical Journal* in 1905 describing the treatment and recovery of a man with cutaneous  
1251 anthrax.<sup>357</sup> Following World War I, antibody mediated therapy for the treatment of diseases  
1252 agents fell by the wayside and were supplanted by antibiotics.<sup>206</sup> However, in the age of bacterial  
1253 resistance renewed effort is being placed in passive immunotherapy. The risk of antibiotic  
1254 resistance in *B.anthraxis* is acute because if the pathogen is maliciously disseminated it will  
1255 almost certainly first be selected or engineered for resistance to the common classes of  
1256 antimicrobial drugs. Revisiting the development of epitope specific antibodies may be a logical  
1257 countermeasure to this risk. In addition, combined with existing therapies immunotherapeutics  
1258 act synergistically through distinct mechanisms. Passive antibodies also possess merit as  
1259 prophylaxis even though the expected half-life in humans is approximately three weeks.<sup>358,359</sup>  
1260 Specific antibodies that are administered intravenously provide immediate protection that could  
1261 be easily given to first responders and individuals with the highest risk of exposure. Compared to  
1262 vaccines which may require a primary and additional booster immunizations while a prepared  
1263 hyper-immune plasma may only require a single dose. In addition, the antibody titers achieved  
1264 through passive immunization can be administered in quantities that exceed those that can be  
1265 achieved with vaccination. This may be of particular benefit in the context of bioterrorism

1266 because of the potentially high infective dose delivered by bioweapons compared with natural  
1267 exposure.

1268         There are several drawbacks to passive immunotherapy. The production of *in vitro*  
1269 monoclonal and recombinant antibody technology is expensive. It is currently not known how  
1270 many doses an individual may need to be administered following a heavy exposure.  
1271 Immunoglobulins produced in animal species can result in allergic and anaphylactic reactions.  
1272 Subsequent doses of non-homologous immunoglobulins increase the risk of reaction and likely  
1273 reduce the effectiveness and circulation as the patient develops a primary immune response  
1274 against the foreign proteins. Despite these short falls, government agencies and programs such as  
1275 Bioshield and the Biomedical Advanced Research and Development Authority have pursued  
1276 refinement of passive immunotherapy and antibody mediated treatments.<sup>360</sup>

1277         The important role for antibodies in protection against anthrax has been confirmed  
1278 through overwhelming evidence demonstrating neutralizing antibodies as key in conferring  
1279 immunity to anthrax.<sup>361</sup> From these studies, it is also apparent that an antibody response  
1280 particularly against protective antigen is sufficient to provide protection.<sup>311,361,362</sup> The only  
1281 vaccine licensed by the FDA for use against anthrax in humans is known as anthrax vaccine  
1282 adsorbed (AVA) or Biothrax<sup>®</sup>. This vaccine has been systematically evaluated and shown to  
1283 principally induce a humoral mediated response against PA and to a lesser extent the other *B.*  
1284 *anthracis* effector molecules.<sup>363</sup> The vaccine is a whole cell lysate containing a large protein  
1285 fraction of PA and smaller fractions of LF and EF. These components are then adjuvanted with  
1286 aluminum hydroxide gel to produce the vaccine. Significant limitations in the vaccine's  
1287 effectiveness include variation in protein content by lot, a slightly unrefined production process

1288 yielding a sometimes highly reactive response in certain individuals and a long course of  
1289 immunization. The current manufacturer's recommendation for vaccine protection includes 6  
1290 immunizations over an 18 month time course. These limitations have instigated a renewed effort  
1291 in identifying more advanced vaccine candidates with the goal of providing a more robust and  
1292 rapid response. One of the most promising candidates have been two purified recombinant PA  
1293 proteins produced from an *Escherichia coli* and an attenuated *B. anthracis* background.<sup>364-366</sup>

1294         Though the AVA vaccine is not licensed for use in post-exposure the scientific literature  
1295 supports a series of post-exposure immunizations based on several animal studies.<sup>367-370</sup> One  
1296 principal study evaluated the efficacy of post-exposure vaccination in non-human primates.<sup>371</sup>  
1297 Among 60 rhesus macaques exposed to a lethal aerosol spore challenge, only animals that  
1298 received a combination of antibiotic therapy and 2 doses of AVA survived the initial challenge  
1299 and a subsequent re-challenge 60 days later. In a companion study, a short-course of  
1300 prophylactic antibiotic treatment (oral ciprofloxacin for 14 days) was compared alone and in  
1301 conjunction with 3 doses of AVA in rhesus macaques.<sup>372</sup> Four of nine animals receiving  
1302 ciprofloxacin alone survived inhalational challenge compared to 10 of 10 receiving ciprofloxacin  
1303 and AVA vaccination.

1304         In the aftermath of the 2001 attacks AVA was not used immediately in individuals  
1305 exposed to *B. anthracis*. One reason was a lack of available supplies.<sup>373</sup> Later near the end of the  
1306 60-day course of prophylactic antibiotic regimen individuals with the highest potential exposure  
1307 were offered the post-exposure AVA series. The US Working Group on Civilian Biodefense  
1308 advocates the combination of prophylactic antibiotic therapy and AVA vaccination as the most  
1309 protective strategy currently available.<sup>373</sup>



1310           It is unlikely that an individual suffering from inhalational anthrax, with the disease's  
1311 rapid incubation and progression, can be afforded protection through vaccination after exposure.  
1312 In the situation of a known exposure, prophylactic antibiotics and/or passive immunotherapy are  
1313 the most effective means of preventing the disease. The epidemiologic data from the limited  
1314 reports where a large number of people were exposed to aerosolized spores suggests that spores  
1315 may persist for some time in the lungs. Therefore, the current recommendations for prophylaxis  
1316 include a 60 day course of antibiotics.<sup>12,374</sup> This approach appeared to be successful in the wake  
1317 of the 2001 attacks, where close to 10,000 people may have been exposed and were provided a  
1318 60 day course of ciprofloxacin or doxycycline. However, a retrospective survey of over 6,000 of  
1319 these individuals revealed that fewer than 45% followed the prophylaxis protocol to its  
1320 completion. Commonly cited reasons for not finishing the therapy included adverse reactions,  
1321 forgetting to take the medication daily, and belief that there was little actual risk of contracting  
1322 the disease.

1323           Universal administration of post-exposure antibiotics is also difficult when the use of the  
1324 most commonly recommended antibiotic are contraindicated, such as in pregnant women and  
1325 children. Perhaps of more concern is the development of multi-drug resistant strains of  
1326 weaponized *B. anthracis*. Naturally occurring isolates have been identified in a limited number  
1327 of cases that display resistance to the  $\beta$  lactams.<sup>375,376</sup> In addition, some investigators have  
1328 demonstrated that simple laboratory techniques such as serial passaging in the presence of  
1329 doxycycline or ciprofloxacin can generate resistant strains. Others have produced a resistant  
1330 strain through transfection of resistance genes encoded on plasmids.<sup>279,377</sup> Finally, there is a

1331 critical point in the progression of systemic anthrax when the toxin load is sufficient to continue  
1332 to cause pathology in spite of appropriate antimicrobial therapy that controls the vegetative cells.

1333 In light of these facts, the development of efficacious alternative modalities in the  
1334 prophylaxis of inhalational anthrax is imperative. Passive immunotherapy using hyperimmune  
1335 polyclonal sera or monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) against several *B. anthracis* antigens has been  
1336 the major focus of the most recent efforts. Specific immunoglobulin therapy is attractive because  
1337 the immediate and prolonged protection against the toxin components. Many investigations  
1338 demonstrate the beneficial effect of anti-PA and anti-LF antibodies in several animal models.

1339 Little *et al.* indicated that anti-PA antibodies alone were sufficient to provide protection  
1340 against an intramuscular challenge of *B. anthracis* Ames spores in guinea pigs.<sup>311</sup> The antiserum  
1341 was harvested from guinea pigs immunized with rPA and passive transfer significantly protected  
1342 (approximately 67%) recipients who were challenged at the time of treatment. However, antisera  
1343 produced against the Sterne strain spore vaccine (demonstrated to possess equal quantities of  
1344 anti-protective antigen specific antibodies, but greater anti-lethal factor and anti-edema factor  
1345 antibodies) was not protective in mice ( approximately 8% survival), although it did increase the  
1346 mean survival time to death compared to controls.<sup>378</sup> Based on these early findings, a greater  
1347 emphasis was placed on the protective capacity of anti-protective antigen antibodies compared to  
1348 that of the other toxin components. Koblier *et al.* investigated the passive protection of rabbit  
1349 anti-PA, anti-LF, and anti-Sterne antisera in guinea pigs challenged intranasally with fully  
1350 virulent Vollurm spores.<sup>379</sup> In that study large volumes of anti-PA antisera administered 24 hours  
1351 postinfection yielded the greatest protection compared to anti-Sterne and anti-LF antisera  
1352 (88.8%, 44.4% and 25%, respectively, anti-PA and anti-Sterne were significantly different than

1353 control). When anti-PA antiserum was combined with anti-LF antisera, the percent survival  
1354 improved to 37.5%. Interestingly, the level of acquired immunity as measured by geometric  
1355 mean titers against PA and survival following re-challenge at 35 days post-infection was greater  
1356 in the anti-Sterne antisera treated animals than in the anti-PA treated animals.<sup>379</sup> The same study  
1357 demonstrated no protective capacity in anti-PA or anti-LF monoclonal antibodies. In contrast to  
1358 these findings, Staats *et al.* showed that an anti-LF monoclonal antibody was effective in  
1359 preventing morbidity associated with lethal toxin injection in mice.<sup>380</sup> They also demonstrated  
1360 that though an anti-PA monoclonal antibody showed higher *in vitro* toxin neutralization, it did  
1361 not protect mice from lethal toxin challenge. However, addition of the anti-LF monoclonal  
1362 antibodies in equal volume improved its protective capacity. The importance of antibody  
1363 mediated immunity over cell-mediated immunity was further demonstrated in a study conducted  
1364 by Beedham *et al.* where naïve mice receiving passive transfer of anti-PA antibodies survived  
1365 longer following challenge with a non-encapsulated toxigenic strain of *B. anthracis* than did  
1366 mice receiving immunized lymphocytes.<sup>381</sup> These preliminary studies provided the frame work  
1367 for more detailed experimental designs that move beyond the assertion of the theoretical benefit  
1368 of passive immunity against *B. anthracis* into investigations of the clinical application of passive  
1369 immunotherapy.

1370 Monoclonal antibodies possess many advantages compared to polyclonal antibodies  
1371 including, well characterized specificity, consistent efficacy and higher standards of purity and  
1372 safety. An engineered affinity-enhanced anti-PA monoclonal antibody was recently produced  
1373 that provided protection to rabbits before and after inhalation challenge with Ames strain.<sup>382,383</sup>  
1374 In another study conjugation of high affinity anti-PA specific monoclonal F<sub>ab</sub> fragments with

1375 polyethylene glycol conferred significant protection against spore inhalation challenge and  
1376 prolonged circulation half-life.<sup>362</sup>

1377 Murine monoclonal antibodies have long been a potential target for the development of  
1378 passive immunotherapy. Early studies provided evidence of the benefit of mAbs in neutralizing  
1379 lethal toxin in cell culture assays and rat toxin challenge models.<sup>384,385</sup> Follow up studies further  
1380 showed that mAbs specific for PA or LF were equally effective in protection of mice against a  
1381 virulent spore challenge.<sup>386</sup> However, not all mAbs are helpful as evidenced by an unexpected  
1382 enhancement of cytotoxicity rather than neutralization through an Fc receptor mediated  
1383 mechanism.<sup>387</sup> These findings suggest that a shotgun approach where mAbs are generated  
1384 without regard to specific epitopes and binding affinity may be detrimental and underscores the  
1385 necessity of identifying and fully characterizing the clinical consequences of mAb therapy.

1386 Animal-derived mAbs have received less attention compared to the chimeric or fully  
1387 humanized immunoglobulins due to the potential for reaction to foreign protein in patients,  
1388 especially after repeated administration. There have been endless advances in antibody  
1389 engineering field that yield human mAbs with longer plasma half-life, enhanced affinity, or  
1390 conjugation of effector molecules such as drugs, radioisotopes or toxins. The development of  
1391 phage display to quickly comb through high affinity recombinant candidates has tremendously  
1392 accelerated the identification of effective mAbs.<sup>388</sup> Wild *et al.* use phage display to isolate two  
1393 F<sub>ab</sub> fragments specific for PA that were then proven protective against lethal toxin challenge in  
1394 rats. Maynard *et al.* constructed single light-chain variable subunits that interfered with the  
1395 binding of PA to the anthrax toxin receptor then used PCR primers with poor fidelity to prepare

1396 affinity-enhanced clones.<sup>389</sup> The pervading objective of these engineered mAbs has been to  
1397 demonstrate more effective protection than traditional parent mAbs.

1398         One group of investigators used a more holistic approach to the isolation of fully human  
1399 mAbs by first collecting lymphocytes specific for *B. anthracis* antigens from the blood of AVA-  
1400 immunized volunteers and then transplanting these cells into combined immunodeficient (SCID)  
1401 mice for the purpose of later isolating plasma cell clones specific for PA.<sup>390</sup> Once the plasma  
1402 cells were isolated they were immortalized as hybridoma cells through fusion with myeloma  
1403 cells. Another approach produced stable expression of full-length human immunoglobulins by  
1404 cloning and transfecting the genes into the genes Chinese hamster ovary cells. This method  
1405 produced an anti-PA antibody with exceptional affinity ( $K_D = 82$  pM) and protected rats from  
1406 lethal toxin challenge even when administered as early as 17 hr prior to challenge. When the  
1407 dose of antibodies used was increased tenfold, 80% of rats survived beyond 7 days. Wang *et al.*  
1408 further characterized this mAb and revealed when bound to PA it inhibited heptamer formation  
1409 and mitigated translocation of the toxins.<sup>391</sup> Later the same mAb was found to fully protect mice  
1410 following intranasal challenge with Ames strain spores, but only when combined with a low dose  
1411 of ciprofloxacin.<sup>392</sup> Re-challenge of the surviving mice with same inoculum dose of Ames spores  
1412 resulted in death of all animals indicating that the immune system had not been stimulated to  
1413 produce a protective response.<sup>392</sup> Guinea pigs infected following an intranasal Ames challenge  
1414 demonstrated similar results in that only animals treated with a combination of AVP-21D9 and  
1415 ciprofloxacin survived.<sup>392</sup> However, AVP-21D9 treatment alone fully protected aerosol  
1416 challenged rabbits even when administered up to 12 h post-infection.<sup>392</sup> Interestingly the  
1417 presence of the antibody did not impair a primary immune response to *B. anthracis* as 23 of 24

1418 animals remained resistant to infection when challenged again by aerosol 5 weeks after the  
1419 primary challenge.<sup>383</sup>

1420 Transgenic mice (HuMab) engineered to express human immunoglobulins have been  
1421 used to produce specific anti-PA antibodies and screened for *in vitro* activity.<sup>393,394</sup> One  
1422 monoclonal, mAB-1303, demonstrated high potency and protected rabbits when administered at  
1423 1 h and 3 days following inhalation challenge.<sup>393</sup> This mAb also protected nonhuman primates  
1424 from aerosol spore challenge when administered intramuscularly at 1 h post-infection.<sup>393</sup> When  
1425 the mechanism was investigated it was discovered that blocking the Fc portion abolished the  
1426 neutralization capacity as did blocking the Fab portion indicating that both subunits are  
1427 necessary. This same effect was observed in immunoglobulins isolated from mice, rabbits, and  
1428 humans.<sup>393</sup> This suggest that administration of the Fab monoclonal fragments may not be as  
1429 effective as full-length immunoglobulins.

1430 The next iteration for these monoclonal therapies is translation from the basic sciences to  
1431 commercial application. The Department of Health and Human Services under the umbrella of  
1432 Homeland Security has been instrumental in funding this endeavor. Four biotechnology  
1433 companies have begun to develop independent fully human monoclonal into licensed products.  
1434 Each of these products have successfully navigated Phase I clinical trials and have been awarded  
1435 Fast-Track and Orphan Drug status by the FDA. One of these monoclonals, raxibacumab,  
1436 (Abthrax<sup>TM</sup>, GlaxoSmithKline) has received FDA approval for the treatment of inhalational  
1437 anthrax and the prevention of inhalational anthrax. The FDA approved this drug based on animal  
1438 studies alone due to the inability to fully determine the effect in humans with anthrax.

1439 Immediately following approval raxibacumab began manufacture to provide 20,000 doses to the  
1440 National Strategic Stockpile in 2009.

1441 One limitation to anti-PA monoclonal therapies are their monospecific nature and  
1442 inefficacy against the other toxins produced by *B. anthracis*. This leaves an opportunity to  
1443 engineer a strain that resists their action. The specific binding epitope for each of the monoclonal  
1444 products currently under commercial development has not been reported. Simply mutating the  
1445 binding epitope may reduce the effectiveness of the drug while the other functions of PA such as  
1446 receptor binding, heptamer formation, and translocation of the EF and LF remain unaffected.  
1447 One solution to this potential problem is the combination of mAbs with independent epitopes for  
1448 PA and/or mAbs targeted toward other *B. anthracis* components. Several groups have isolated  
1449 anti-LF and anti-capsule mAbs that have been demonstrated efficacious in neutralizing lethal  
1450 toxin *in vivo* and *in vitro*.<sup>395-399</sup>

1451 An alternative approach is the application of polyclonal plasma. Cangene Corporation  
1452 and Emergent Biosolutions manufacture polyclonal immunoglobulins ('Anthrax Immune  
1453 Globulin', AIG) harvested from the plasma of human volunteers immunized with AVA. The  
1454 advantage of polyclonal antibody therapy lies in its breadth of antigenic targets developed during  
1455 a natural immune response. These multiple specific antibodies have the additional advantage of  
1456 improving the efficiency of immune effector mechanisms such as opsinization and phagocytosis,  
1457 complement mediated bacterial lysis, and antibody-dependent cell lysis of intracellularly infected  
1458 macrophages. There are limitations to human donated plasma however, including limited  
1459 availability, variation in antibody titers between individuals, the risk of iatrogenic transmission

1460 of blood-borne pathogens, and the high cost of production. Despite these hurdles Cangene has  
1461 been requested to produce 10,000 doses of AIG for the US National Strategic Stockpile.

1462         Select studies using small animal models have demonstrated a greater protective capacity  
1463 from polyclonal sera than mAbs.<sup>178</sup> Passive transfer of polyclonal plasma collected from guinea  
1464 pig immunized against PA or LF protected a larger number of animals following spore compared  
1465 to monovalent monoclonal passive therapy (67% and 33%, respectively).<sup>177</sup> Monoclonal  
1466 antibodies have the decided advantage of tailored antigenic specificity compared to polyclonal  
1467 antibodies. But few studies have evaluated the potential benefits of simultaneously neutralizing  
1468 multiple epitopes. Monospecific therapy may be rendered ineffective if the epitope can be  
1469 modified in a way that eliminates the binding affinity. The most significant limitation of  
1470 polyclonal sera is the inefficiency of production. The ideal passive immunotherapy for anthrax  
1471 must be robust and highly specific against the most relevant epitopes, non-toxic to humans, long  
1472 lasting and adaptable to large scale commercial production.

1473



1474 **Chapter 2:**

1475 **The production of hyper-immune plasma from horses serially immunized with a**  
1476 ***Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine and recombinant protective antigen**

1477 Marc Caldwell, DVM<sup>a</sup>; Sara Ziska, DVM, PhD<sup>c</sup>; John Schumacher, DVM, MS<sup>b</sup>;

1478 Kenny V. Brock, DVM, MS, PhD<sup>c</sup>

1479 <sup>a</sup>Department of Large Animal Clinical Sciences, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN

1480 <sup>b</sup>Department of Clinical Sciences, Auburn University, Auburn, AL

1481 <sup>c</sup> Department of Pathobiology, Auburn University, Auburn, AL

1482 **Abstract**

1483 The objective of this study was to develop a safe and reliable immunization protocol for  
1484 producing equine source hyper-immune plasma against *Bacillus anthracis*. Six Percheron horses  
1485 were immunized with either the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vaccine or recombinant protective  
1486 antigen (rPA) homogenized with Freund's incomplete adjuvant. Multiple routes of  
1487 immunization, dose (antigen mass) and immunizing antigens were explored for safety. A  
1488 modified automated plasmapheresis process was then employed for the collection of plasma at a  
1489 maximum target dose of up to 22 ml of plasma/kg of donor bodyweight to establish the proof-of-  
1490 concept that large volumes of plasma could be safely collected from horses for large scale  
1491 production of immune plasma.<sup>400</sup> All three immunization protocols were found to be safe and

1492 repeatable in horses and three pheresis events were performed with the total collection of 168.36  
1493 L of plasma and a mean collection volume of 18.71 L ( $\pm$  0.302 L).

## 1494 **Introduction**

1495 *Bacillus anthracis* is a gram-positive aerobic rod and the causative agent of anthrax.  
1496 Anthrax virulence is defined by the production of two toxins known as lethal toxin and edema  
1497 toxin. Each toxin is composed of two components as effector molecules, lethal factor and edema  
1498 factor respectively, and a common component known as protective antigen (PA). The toxins gain  
1499 entry into the cell by means polymerization of PA after binding to cell surface associated  
1500 receptors and establishing a pore through the cell membrane.<sup>401,402</sup> Vaccination studies have  
1501 revealed that high antibody titer against PA is directly correlated with survival following lethal  
1502 spore challenge.<sup>403,404</sup> Moreover, the passive administration of polyclonal antisera against PA  
1503 protected laboratory animals from inhalational anthrax.<sup>405,406</sup> Those studies established a  
1504 minimum titer of 1:200 was necessary for protection in guinea pigs. Hyper immune serum or  
1505 plasma is equally effective in post-exposure treatment experiments.<sup>407</sup> In addition to PA  
1506 antibodies targeting other epitopes of *B. anthracis* demonstrate protection. When monoclonal  
1507 antibodies targeting spore antigens were administered to mice following a spore challenge,  
1508 spores were prevented from germinating.<sup>408</sup> This suggests that polyclonal immunotherapeutics  
1509 that have a broad range of targets may have greater efficacy through inhibition of *B.anthraxis*  
1510 throughout the infection cycle.

1511 *B. anthracis* Sterne strain is an avirulent strain cured of the pXO2 plasmid where the  
1512 genes that encode for the poly-D-glutamic acid capsule found in virulent strains are located.<sup>409</sup>

1513 This strain still possesses the pXO1 plasmid and is hence capable of producing each of the three  
1514 toxin components. The strain has been used effectively as a live avirulent vaccine worldwide in  
1515 humans and animals.<sup>17</sup> Currently it is licensed for the prevention of anthrax in livestock species  
1516 including horses in the United States.<sup>410</sup>

1517 The goal of this study was to establish an effective immunization protocol for the  
1518 development of equine hyper-immune plasma against anthrax that could be evaluated for  
1519 protective efficacy in later studies. Here we explored using the Sterne strain spore vaccine  
1520 administered to horses monthly both subcutaneously (SC) and intramuscularly (IM) for over a  
1521 year. We also establish the safety of using alternative antigens and an increased dose of spore  
1522 vaccine in an attempt to maximize specific antibody production. Finally, the successful  
1523 collection of hyper-immune plasma through automated plasmapheresis and demonstrate proof-  
1524 of-concept for the large scale inexpensive production of equine anti-*B. anthracis* immune plasma  
1525 is described in detail.

## 1526 **Materials and Methods**

### 1527 *Animals*

1528 The work reported herein was performed under the approval of the Institutional Animal  
1529 Care and Use Committee of Auburn University. Six Percheron draft mares were obtained and  
1530 determined to be healthy based upon the findings of physical examination, complete blood cell  
1531 count, and serum biochemistry analysis. Agar gel immunodiffusion tests for each horse were  
1532 negative for the presences of antibodies against equine infectious anemia. In addition, each horse

1533 was negative for equine herpesvirus-1 via PCR assay. During the study the horses were  
1534 maintained on mixed grass-Bermuda pastures with *ad libitum* access to water. Each horse was  
1535 provided approximately 3 kg of 12 % crude protein pelleted feed daily. During the study period,  
1536 each horse received moxidectin as a routine anthelmintic and was immunized annually against  
1537 tetanus, rabies, equine herpesvirus-1, equine influenza and *Streptococcus equi* spp *equi*. The  
1538 horses were immunized twice annually against Eastern and Western equine encephalitis and  
1539 West Nile virus.100

#### 1540 *Antigens*

1541 The Sterne strain 34F2 spore vaccine used was the commercially available Anthrax Spore  
1542 Vaccine (Colorado Serum Company, Denver, CO). Each vial was maintained at 4<sup>0</sup> C protected  
1543 from light until ready to administer. Recombinant protective antigen (rPA) was obtained from  
1544 List Biological Laboratories (Campbell, CA). Each vial was reconstituted with 1.0 ml of sterile  
1545 distilled water to create a concentration of 1 µg/µl. Following reconstitution, the antigen was  
1546 aliquoted in 20 µl volumes and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use. Each dose of rPA vaccine was  
1547 prepared the day of immunization as follows; 100 µg of rPA was thawed at 4<sup>0</sup> C overnight and  
1548 combined with 500 µl Freund's incomplete antigen then homogenized and drawn into a syringe.

#### 1549 *Spore Vaccine Immunization Protocol*

1550 The following description is provided in outline format in Table 2.1. Each horse was  
1551 immunized with 1.0 ml of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine administered SC in the neck.  
1552 A booster dose was administered subcutaneously on Day 21. Following these initial doses two

1553 horses were randomly selected with the aid of computer software and continued to be  
1554 administered 1.0 ml spore vaccine subcutaneously in the neck monthly from Day 56 to Day 155,  
1555 while the remaining two horses received 1.0 ml spore vaccine intramuscularly in the neck at the  
1556 same time periods. Whole blood samples were collected in sodium citrate from each horse on  
1557 Days 0, 21, 56 and monthly thereafter, and plasma stored at  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$  until ready for analysis.

1558           On Day 185, 1 horse from each subset was randomly selected to continue immunizations  
1559 monthly as described. These immunizations occurred monthly from Day 185 until Day 366. For  
1560 the remaining two horses immunization was withheld in an attempt to determine the persistence  
1561 of antibody titers.

#### 1562 *2X Spore Vaccine Immunization Protocol*

1563           Following the initial immunization protocol, two horses that had previously been  
1564 immunized against *B. anthracis* according to the schedule above were randomly selected to  
1565 receive an increased dosage of spore vaccine in an attempt to maximize antibody titer response.  
1566 Each horse was immunized with 2.0 ml of spore vaccine administered subcutaneously in the  
1567 neck. A second immunization was administered 14 days after the initial dose and then monthly  
1568 thereafter for a total of six immunizations, Table 2.2.

#### 1569 *Recombinant Protective Antigen Immunization Protocol in Primed Horses*

1570           Following the initial immunization regime, the remaining two horses that had previously  
1571 been immunized against *B. anthracis* according to the schedule in Table 1 were randomly  
1572 selected to receive immunization with 100  $\mu\text{g}$  of *B. anthracis* recombinant protective antigen

1573 (rPA). First each horse received a single booster immunization of 1.0 ml *B. anthracis* spore  
1574 vaccine. Thirty days following the booster immunization, each horse was administered 100 µg of  
1575 rPA homogenized with Freund's incomplete adjuvant was administered intradermally (ID) in the  
1576 skin along either side of the neck. Intradermal administration of 100 µg rPA was repeated  
1577 monthly for six total immunizations, Table 2.3.

#### 1578 *Recombinant Protective Antigen Immunization Protocol in Non-Primed Horses*

1579 To determine the ability of rPA alone to elicit specific antibody titers against *B.*  
1580 *anthracis*, two naïve Percheron horses were obtained and determined to be healthy and free of  
1581 infectious diseases as outlined above. A primary immunization of 100 µg of rPA homogenized  
1582 with Freund's incomplete adjuvant was administered ID in the neck of each horse. Booster  
1583 immunizations were administered approximately 30 days apart for a total of six total  
1584 immunizations, Table 2.4.

#### 1585 *Plasmapheresis*

1586 Prior to the plasma collection procedure, a physical examination was performed to  
1587 determine if each horse was suitable for plasma donation. Plasmapheresis was only performed  
1588 when the horses were deemed healthy based on the finding of physical examination, displayed a  
1589 rectal temperature < 39.5°C and total plasma protein concentration > 5.5 g/dL, as determined via  
1590 refractometry. Each horse was weighed in order to determine the maximum target donated  
1591 plasma volume based on the following equation: 22 ml of plasma/kg of donor body weight. Hair  
1592 was clipped from a 20 cm x 12 cm area over each jugular vein. The areas were prepared for  
1593 catheterization by washing with 2% chlorhexidine acetate saturated gauze sponge.

1594 Approximately 1.5 mL of 2% lidocaine hydrochloride was injected intradermally over each  
1595 catheterization site, and a small skin incision was made with a No. 15 scalpel blade in the  
1596 anesthetized areas. A 10-gauge, 76-mm catheter was inserted through each skin incision and  
1597 directed ventrally into each jugular vein of donor horses. The catheters were capped and then  
1598 secured in place with 2-0 polydioxanone sutures. Plasmapheresis was performed with the horses  
1599 standing in stocks. The head of each horse was placed in a sling made from padded saddle girths.  
1600 The catheters of each donor horse were connected to a modified disposable collection set (4R-  
1601 2252 Plasmacell-C set, Baxter-Fenwal, Lake Zurich, IL.), which was installed on 2  
1602 simultaneously operating Auto-C plasmapheresis instruments (Autopheresis-C A-200, Baxter-  
1603 Fenwal, Lake Zurich, IL) . A tourniquet consisting of an elastic wrap was placed around the neck  
1604 of donors and was designed to put pressure on only the right jugular vein to prevent venous  
1605 collapse and ensure adequate blood flow through the catheter during the procedure. Whole blood  
1606 was continuously extracted from the outflow catheter and infused with sodium citrate solution at  
1607 a controlled rate, which resulted in an anticoagulant-to-whole blood ratio of 1:16. The anti-  
1608 coagulated whole blood passed through the modified disposable collection set toward the  
1609 separation device associated with each instrument. The separation device acted as a rotating  
1610 membrane filter to separate plasma from cellular components of blood. Plasma exited the bottom  
1611 port of each separation device, passed through the instrument's refractometer, and entered the  
1612 20-L-capacity collection bag. Simultaneously, concentrated blood cells exited the side port of  
1613 each separation device, then passed through the cell pump and immediately back into the donor  
1614 via the inflow catheter. Each instrument processed approximately 135 mL of whole blood/min.

1615 Each horse was closely observed throughout the plasmapheresis procedure. Pulse rate,  
1616 respiratory rate, characteristics of the mucous membranes, and an ECG were recorded at  
1617 approximately the midpoint and at the end of each plasmapheresis procedure. Donors were  
1618 administered detomidine (3 to 6 µg/kg, IV) or detomidine and butorphanol (3 to 6 µg of each/kg,  
1619 IV) respectively during the procedure as needed; sedatives were administered IV through an  
1620 infusion port located in the modified disposable collection set. At the end of the plasmapheresis  
1621 procedure, the tourniquet was removed from the neck of each horse. Each horse then received 15  
1622 L of fluids IV via gravity flow. Catheters were removed from the jugular veins after fluid  
1623 administration; hemostasis at the catheterization sites was achieved by use of 4 X 4-inch gauze  
1624 sponges and slight manual pressure. The donors then were washed, visually inspected, and  
1625 returned to pasture.

1626 The collection bag was transported to a separate room for further processing. There, the  
1627 plasma was homogenized and aseptically placed into 1-L high-density polyethylene bottles.  
1628 Appropriate labels were applied to the bottles; bottles were stored at -80°C in a continuously  
1629 monitored freezer until ready for use.

## 1630 **Results**

### 1631 *Immunization*

1632 No adverse events resulting in clinical illness were found following the immunization of  
1633 horses with each of these antigens. The live attenuated Sterne strain spore vaccine was  
1634 apparently well tolerated after multiple administrations via both subcutaneous and intramuscular



1635 route. Similarly the administration of 100 µg of rPA appeared to be well tolerated in both  
1636 previously immunized and naïve horses.

### 1637 *Plasmapheresis*

1638 Three successful pheresis events were performed resulting in the collection of a total of  
1639 168.36 L of sterile immune plasma, with a mean collection volume of 18.71 L (SEM ±0.302 L),  
1640 Table 2.5. The described technique was tolerated well by all horses and no adverse clinical  
1641 events were reported during or following the pheresis procedure.

## 1642 **Discussion**

1643 The present study details the methods used in producing hyper immune plasma against *B.*  
1644 *anthracis* from horses. The plasma produced in this study was later evaluated for specific anti-  
1645 PA antibody titers in a validated ELISA, toxin neutralization activity in a mouse macrophage cell  
1646 culture assay, and passive immunoprotection assays using a homologous lethal challenge model  
1647 in susceptible mice.

1648 The Sterne strain spore vaccine was chosen, in part, due to its ready availability and prior  
1649 approval for use in livestock species in the United States, but also because it is a fully toxigenic  
1650 spore strain potentially leading to a broader response than whole cell lysate vaccines or rPA  
1651 alone. The manufacturer's adverse clinical event warning describes the potential for light to  
1652 moderate swelling at the site of injection that is self-limiting.<sup>411</sup> Others report reversion to  
1653 virulence following use of the vaccine in other species.<sup>412</sup> In the present study, no apparent ill  
1654 effect was induced by this vaccine at any time point. To the authors' knowledge this is the first

1655 report of horses receiving multiple doses of this vaccine in this frequency. Monthly  
1656 immunization intervals were chosen for the initiation of immunity in this study, but greater  
1657 evaluation of titers and duration of immunity are needed to determine if this is the most effective  
1658 means of establishing and maintaining antibody production.

1659         The technique for automated plasmapheresis in horses as described here has been  
1660 previously reported and established as a safe and reliable means to collect large volumes of  
1661 immune equine plasma.<sup>400,413,414</sup> The mean collection volumes recorded in this study were  
1662 similar to the volumes reported in those works.

1663         Polyclonal antisera have diverse immunoglobulins that target different antigens. Most  
1664 passive immunization trials evaluating monoclonal preparations against PA reveal a poor  
1665 correlation of anti-PA affinity and protective capacity indicating that neutralization of multiple  
1666 epitopes or toxin components are necessary in immunity against anthrax.<sup>311,380,415,416</sup> However,  
1667 in polyclonal preparations there are immunoglobulins that do not target protective epitopes and  
1668 the specific neutralizing antibodies are a small fraction of the total immunoglobulin profile.  
1669 Hence, polyclonal sera tends to have lower specific affinity relative to monoclonal preparations.  
1670 Other short comings are lot-to-lot variations in the amount of specific antibody and potential  
1671 immune response against the foreign proteins.<sup>417,418</sup> The advantage of equine based polyclonal  
1672 antibody production are the rapid induction of immunity in donor horses, the production of large  
1673 volumes of hyper immune plasma that can be collected as frequently as every two weeks, and the  
1674 relative lack of cost and infrastructure requirements when compared to the production of  
1675 equivalent volumes of monoclonal antibodies or human polyclonal preparations.

1676

1677 **Table 2.1 Immunization protocol for individual horses.** Four horses were immunized with a  
 1678 B. anthracis Sterne strain spore vaccine either subcutaneously or intramuscularly monthly for  
 1679 approximately 1 year. Whole blood samples were collected at predetermined intervals for  
 1680 analysis of specific antibody production.

1681

1682

1683

1684

1685

1686

Horse ID: AX 1	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
21	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
56	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
91	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
119	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
154	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
184	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
210	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
249	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
275	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
303	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
332	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
366	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC

Horse ID: AX 2

<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
21	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
56	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
91	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
119	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
154	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
184	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
210	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
249	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
275	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
303	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
332	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
366	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM

1687

1688

1689

1690

1691

1692

1693

Horse ID: AX 3	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
21	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
56	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
91	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
119	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
154	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
184	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
210	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
249	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
275	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
303	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
332	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
366	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC

Horse ID: AX 4

<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
21	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
56	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
91	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
119	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
154	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
184	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
210	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
249	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
275	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
303	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
332	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
366	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM

1694 **Table 2.2 Immunization protocol for alternative dosing of Sterne strain spore vaccine in**  
 1695 **individual horses.** Following immunization using the initial protocol two horses were randomly  
 1696 selected to receive an increased dose of Sterne strain spore vaccine in an attempt to maximize  
 1697 specific antibody titers.

1698

Horse ID: AX 2	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
41	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
70	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
98	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
126	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
160	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC

1698

Horse ID: AX 4	
Previous Immunized Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
41	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
70	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
98	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
126	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
160	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC

1703 **Table 2.3 Immunization protocol for previously immunized horses receiving recombinant**  
 1704 **protective antigen.** Following immunization using the initial protocol two horses were randomly  
 1705 selected to receive 100 µg of recombinant protective antigen (rPA) homogenized with Freund's  
 1706 incomplete adjuvant administered ID in an attempt to maximize specific antibody titers.

1707

Horse ID: AX 1	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	100 ug rPA ID
41	100 ug rPA ID
70	100 ug rPA ID
98	100 ug rPA ID
126	100 ug rPA ID
160	100 ug rPA ID

1707

Horse ID: AX 3	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	100 ug rPA ID
41	100 ug rPA ID
70	100 ug rPA ID
98	100 ug rPA ID
126	100 ug rPA ID
160	100 ug rPA ID

1714

1715 **Table 2.4 Immunization protocol for naïve horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant**  
 1716 **protective antigen.** Two previously non-immunized horses were administered 100 µg of rPA  
 1717 homogenized with Freund’s incomplete adjuvant ID in an attempt to maximize specific antibody  
 1718 titers.

1719

Horse ID: AX 5	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	100 ug rPA ID
13	100 ug rPA ID
41	100 ug rPA ID
70	100 ug rPA ID
98	100 ug rPA ID
126	100 ug rPA ID
160	100 ug rPA ID

1719

Horse ID: AX 6	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	100 ug rPA ID
13	100 ug rPA ID
41	100 ug rPA ID
70	100 ug rPA ID
98	100 ug rPA ID
126	100 ug rPA ID
160	100 ug rPA ID

1724

1725 **Table 2.5 Mean collection volumes for three plasmapheresis events.** Three horses were  
 1726 subjected to plasmapheresis on three separate occasions. No adverse clinical events were  
 1727 reported during or after the pheresis events.

Horse ID	Event 1 (10/19/09)	Event 2 (12/9/09)	Event 3 (4/28/10)	Mean Volume
AX1	18.71 L	19.63 L	20.09 L	18.57 L
AX3	18.02 L	19.05 L	18.92 L	18.74 L
AX4	18.99 L	17.53 L	17.39 L	18.81 L
			<b>Overall Mean</b>	<b>18.71 L</b>

1728

1729

### Chapter 3:

1730 **Validation of an anti-protective antigen ELISA for the evaluation of hyper-immune plasma**  
1731 **derived from horses serially immunized against *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain**

1732 Marc Caldwell, DVM<sup>a</sup>; Terri Hathcock, MS<sup>b</sup>; Kenny V. Brock, DVM, MS, PhD<sup>c</sup>

1733 <sup>a</sup>Department of Large Animal Clinical Sciences, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN

1734 <sup>c</sup> Department of Pathobiology, Auburn University, Auburn, AL

1735

#### Abstract

1736 The potency test for anthrax vaccines has historically involved the challenge of actively  
1737 or passively immunized laboratory animals with a fully virulent strain of *Bacillus anthracis*.  
1738 Lethal challenge studies with the archetypal virulent strains such as *B. anthracis* Ames strain  
1739 present considerable difficulties laboratory management and handling and are too inefficient for  
1740 the early evaluation alternative therapeutic interventions. An ELISA for the evaluation of  
1741 antibody response to protective antigen (PA) in horses immunized with the Sterne 34F2 strain  
1742 spore and recombinant protective antigen (rPA) vaccines was developed. The objective of this  
1743 work was to study the performance of this assay in terms of the guidelines set forth by the  
1744 International Conference on Harmonics (ICH) and the Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
1745 Research (CBER) for analytical procedures. We have demonstrated a working range for this  
1746 assay (73-1581 EU/ml) on the bases of the following parameters: linearity (25 and 1,662 EU/ml,  
1747  $R^2 = 0.9988$ ,  $p < 0.001$ ), accuracy (94.8 - 105.4 %, recovery within the range of 25 and 1,662  
1748 EU/ml), precision ( $\leq 17.6$  % CV, repeatability;  $\leq 15.7$  and  $\leq 13.1$  % CV, intermediate precision

1749 per day and per analyst, respectively), limit of detection (2.25 EU/ml) and limit of quantitation  
1750 (25 EU/ml). The assay was also demonstrated to be specific for the evaluation of anti-PA  
1751 antibodies. Based on the assay performance characteristics it was determined that the assay was  
1752 adequate for use in *B. anthracis* immunogenicity testing in horses.

## 1753 **Introduction**

1754 *Bacillus anthracis* is the causative agent of anthrax. One important aspect of virulence for  
1755 *B. anthracis* is the production of three exotoxin proteins that encoded on the pXO1 plasmid.  
1756 These proteins are known as lethal factor (LF), edema factor (EF) and protective antigen (PA).  
1757 These three subunits combine in binary fashion to form the active toxins, lethal toxin and edema  
1758 toxin. The common protein subunit in these toxins is the 83 kDa protein known as protective  
1759 antigen. After binding to its cell surface receptor PA polymerizes into a heptamer pore and  
1760 mediates cellular entry of the effector molecules, LF and EF.<sup>134</sup> Targeting PA is key to protection  
1761 and has been demonstrated in several *B. anthracis* toxin and live virulent challenges.<sup>419-421</sup>

1762 An equine source polyclonal hyper-immune plasma targeted against *B. anthracis* was  
1763 developed. The hyper-immune plasma was derived from horses hyper-immunized against the  
1764 acapsular, toxigenic Sterne 34F2 strain of *B. anthracis*. In the development of this plasma, a need  
1765 arose for the evaluation of the titer response against PA. Historically, potency tests for *B.*  
1766 *anthracis* vaccines and passive immunotherapy involved the lethal challenge of passively or  
1767 actively immunized guinea pigs.<sup>422</sup> These bioassays are expensive and handling fully virulent *B.*  
1768 *anthracis* requires specialized containment facilities. Therefore a well-defined immunogenicity  
1769 assay was needed to overcome this challenge and provide consistent and accurate assessment of

1770 the immune response of horses during the immunization process. Immunogenicity assays are  
1771 designed to assess antibody response against a set dose of vaccine. Two types of immunogenicity  
1772 assays have been developed for the assessment of anti-PA antibodies in other species; antigen-  
1773 specific ELISA and toxin neutralization assays.<sup>423</sup>

1774 In order to assess the antibody titer response in hyper-immunized horses an indirect  
1775 ELISA was developed and validated. The objective of validation of an analytical procedure  
1776 consists of defining performance characteristics and determining if the assay consistently meets  
1777 its intended purpose and pre-determined specifications and quality attributes. The International  
1778 Conference on Harmonic (ICH) and the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER)  
1779 have set forth guidelines for validating assays which are summarized in the validation of  
1780 compendial procedures.<sup>423,424</sup> We conducted a series of evaluations designed to examine the  
1781 assays capacity for specificity, linearity, limit of detection, accuracy, precision and limit of  
1782 quantitation.

## 1783 **Materials and Methods**

### 1784 *Antigens*

1785 Recombinant protective antigen (rPA) was obtained from List Biological Laboratories  
1786 (Campbell, CA). Each vial was reconstituted with 1.0 ml of sterile distilled water to create a  
1787 concentration of 1 µg/µl and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use. The ovalbumin used as a control  
1788 in the specificity experiments was obtained from Thermo Scientific (Inject Ovalbumin, Thermo



1789 Scientific, Rockford, IL) Each vial was reconstituted with 1.0 ml of sterile distilled water to  
1790 create a concentration of 1 µg/µl and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use.

1791 *Plasma Samples*

1792 Plasma was obtained from horses hyper-immunized with *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain  
1793 34F2 spore vaccine (Anthrax Spore Vaccine, Colorado Serum Company, Denver Colorado) at  
1794 monthly intervals for approximately one year. At each sampling 20 ml of whole blood was  
1795 collected into syringes pre-loaded with sodium citrate as an anticoagulant. Each sample was  
1796 centrifuged at 5000 x g for 30 minutes. The plasma was then aspirated from the red cells and  
1797 divided into 2 ml aliquots and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use.

1798 Four hyper-immune plasma samples were randomly chosen from the samples collected  
1799 after 56 days (representing fully primed individuals) and pooled to make a reference plasma  
1800 sample (REF) that would be used to develop a titration curve and would then serve as the  
1801 positive standard for each subsequent assay.

1802 Plasma used for negative standards were obtained from two horses presumed to have had  
1803 no previous exposure to *B. anthracis* or the vaccine (Normal horse plasma, NHP). Samples were  
1804 collected and processed as described above.

1805 *Quantification of anti-PA antibodies*

1806 Wells of an Immulon 2 HB, 96-well round bottom microtiter plate (Southern Biological,  
1807 Birmingham, AL) were coated with 100 µl of a coating solution (rPA diluted at 1 µg/ml in a 0.01

1808 M PBS solution, pH 7.4). Plates were sealed with parafilm and incubated overnight (16 +/- 2  
1809 hours) refrigerated at 4<sup>0</sup> C. Following antigen coating the plates were washed three times using  
1810 300 µl/well of washing buffer (0.01 M PBS and 0.1% Tween 20) each wash. Unknown, REF,  
1811 and NHP samples were thawed at 4<sup>0</sup>C overnight and kept on ice until ready to use. Unknown  
1812 samples were pre-diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer and 200 µL were added to wells of the first  
1813 row. REF samples were also pre-diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer and 200 µL were added to two  
1814 wells of the first row. NHP samples were diluted 1:50 in dilution buffer and 200 µL were added  
1815 to the remaining two wells in the first row. 100 µl of dilution buffer (0.01 M PBS, 5% goat  
1816 serum, and 0.5% Tween 20) was added to all remaining wells. Twofold serial dilutions were  
1817 made across the plate by mixing and transferring 100 µl of diluted antibodies between adjacent  
1818 rows. The plate was sealed and incubated at 37<sup>0</sup> C for 1 hour. After the plate was washed as  
1819 described previously, 100 µl of 1:1000 dilution of goat anti-horse antibody conjugated to HRP  
1820 (Jackson ImmunoResearch Lab, INC, West Grove, PA) in dilution buffer was added to each well  
1821 and the plate was sealed and incubated again at 37<sup>0</sup>C for 1 hour.

1822           Following three additional post-incubation washes, described previously, 100 µl of the  
1823 substrate ABTS (2,2'-Azinobis [3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid]-diammonium salt,  
1824 Thermo Scientific, Rockford, IL) was added to each well. The plate was sealed and incubated at  
1825 room temperature protected from light for 20 min. Optical Density (OD) was read at dual  
1826 wavelength (405 and 550 nm) in a Bio-Tek Elx800 plate reader (Bio-Tek Instruments, Inc.  
1827 Winooski, VT).

1828

1829 *Titration Curve*

1830           Eight rPA-coated microtiter plates were prepared as described above. Following  
1831 overnight incubation, approximately 200 µl of REF diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer was added to  
1832 the first well of three rows on each plate. Twofold serial dilutions were made across the plate by  
1833 mixing and transferring 100 µl of diluted antibodies between adjacent rows. In this way each  
1834 plate contained triplicate REF sample dilutions. The samples were then subjected to the anti-PA  
1835 ELISA as described. A titration curve was drawn using individual OD values at each dilution  
1836 point from the 24 assays relating the log<sub>10</sub> assigned units/mL vs. log<sub>10</sub> OD. Once established,  
1837 REF was used a positive control in each assay thereafter, Figure 3.1.

1838 *Specificity*

1839           Two experiments were carried out in order to demonstrate the specificity of this ELISA.  
1840 In the first, a 750 µl volume of a 1:500 dilution of REF was mixed with an equal volume of rPA  
1841 at 100 µg/ml and incubated for 1 hour at 37<sup>0</sup> C. After incubation, 100 µl of the mixture were  
1842 deposited in three wells in each of two rPA-coated microtiter plates. Then, 100 µl of NHP,  
1843 diluted 1:50 in dilution buffer was added to an additional four wells on each of the plates.  
1844 Finally, un-treated REF samples, pre-diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer, were added to four wells  
1845 on each microtiter plate that had been left uncoated.

1846           In the second experiment, two rPA microtiter plates were prepared as described except  
1847 that ovalbumin (100 µl diluted at 1 µg/ml in a 0.01 M PBS solution), a heterologous protein to *B.*  
1848 *anthracis* PA, was used to coat six wells in each plate. After the overnight incubation, one of the

1849 plates was treated with a blocking solution containing 0.5% skim milk and 0.05% Tween 20 in  
1850 PBS for 1.5 hours at room temperature (Plate I), while the other remained untreated (Plate II).  
1851 Reference plasma, pre-diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer, were added to two top wells of the plates  
1852 and serially diluted twofold. In addition, 100  $\mu$ l of NHP, diluted 1:50 in dilution buffer was  
1853 added to an additional four wells on each of the plates. Finally, 100  $\mu$ l of pre-diluted 1:500 REF  
1854 in dilution buffer was added to each of the six wells coated with ovalbumin on each plate. Both  
1855 plates were subjected to the anti-PA ELISA as described previously.

#### 1856 *Limit of Detection*

1857 Two samples of NHP were diluted 1:50 in dilution buffer and subjected to the anti-PA  
1858 ELISA in triplicate in two microtiter plates, on each of the five days within two weeks. Fresh  
1859 dilutions and rPA-coated plates were individually prepared and used daily. Limit of detection  
1860 was estimated by interpolating the mean of 60 OD values, plus three standard deviations, in a  
1861 titration curve of REF relating  $\log_{10}$  assigned units/ml per well vs.  $\log_{10}$  OD. The antilog of the  
1862 interpolated value was subsequently corrected by the dilution of the sample (1:50).

#### 1863 *Linearity*

1864 Seven unknown plasma samples of varying antibody concentrations, S1 through S7, were  
1865 used for the assessment of assay linearity. S1 was a randomly selected hyper-immune plasma  
1866 sample taken for one of the *B. anthracis* horses. Samples S2 through S7 consisted of individually  
1867 prepared dilutions of S1 in twofold increments, from 1:2 through 1:64. All samples were diluted  
1868 1:500 in dilution buffer and subjected to the anti-PA ELISA. All seven samples were randomly

1869 distributed in each of three coated microtiter plates. Log<sub>10</sub> estimates of antibody concentration  
1870 per sample (three reads, one per plate) were plotted vs. corresponding log<sub>10</sub> reciprocal dilution,  
1871 and the correlation coefficient, the y-intercept, the slope of the regression line and also the *p*-  
1872 value for the lack of fit were calculated.

### 1873 *Accuracy*

1874 Units per ml of each of four freshly made samples (S1, S3, S5 and S6 equivalents to the  
1875 linearity assay) were estimated by anti-PA ELISA. Each sample was assayed in triplicate in each  
1876 of three plates. Accuracy is expressed as percent recovery: mean estimated units per ml/assigned  
1877 units per ml x 100. The assigned concentration of each sample represents the geometric mean  
1878 estimate of S1 units (n=16), corrected for each sample's dilution.

### 1879 *Precision*

1880 Three samples (S1, S3 and S5) were individually prepared and diluted 1:500 in dilution  
1881 buffer. A triplicate of each sample was serially diluted twofold in each of three microtiter plates  
1882 and subjected to the anti-PA ELISA on three consecutive days by two analysts. Results are  
1883 expressed as %CV (SD/mean x 100).

### 1884 *Limit of Quantification*

1885 Three samples showing relatively low antibody titers (equivalent to samples S5, S6, and  
1886 S7) were freshly prepared. Each sample was diluted 1:100 in dilution buffer in triplicate and

1887 serially diluted in each of three microtiter plates. Anti-PA ELISA was performed on three  
1888 consecutive days. Results are expressed as % CV (SD/mean x 100).

### 1889 *Statistical Analysis*

1890 The titration and linearity curves were drawn in Microsoft Excel® 2010 and were  
1891 analyzed by linear regression analysis. Student's T tests were used compare mean OD values for  
1892 the specificity experiment. All statistical analyses were conducted using IBM SPSS Statistics  
1893 version 21.

## 1894 **Results**

### 1895 *Specificity*

1896 Plasma from *naïve* horses (NHP) demonstrated no significant reactivity with PA in the  
1897 ELISA comparable to REF plasma when applied to uncoated wells ( $p = 0.092$ ), Table 3.1a. The  
1898 pre-incubation of free rPA with REF reduced the binding activity to background levels which  
1899 was not significantly different from the OD values observed for NHP ( $p = 0.213$ ), Table 3.1a.  
1900 The results of Table 3.1b indicate that a separate blocking step is not required in this system, as  
1901 the blocking solution tested only resulted in a significant effect for the highest REF dilutions  
1902 (1:500). In addition, the REF demonstrated no significant difference in binding activity  
1903 compared to NHP when ovalbumin was used to coat to the wells of the microtiter plate  
1904 ( $p=0.482$ ), Table 3.1c.

1905

1906 *Limit of Detection*

1907           Table 3.2a summarizes the OD values obtained from repeated testing in the PA-ELISA of  
1908 the two NHP samples. The mean OD value for NHP and standard deviation was calculated  
1909 (0.045 and 0.019, respectively) and interpolated in the titration curve, Table 3.2b and Figure 1.  
1910 The anti-PA ELISA is capable of detecting antibody levels above 2.25 EU/ml.

1911 *Accuracy*

1912           Results of the accuracy assessment are presented in Table 3.3. The mean OD value for S1  
1913 after 9 assays was 2.494 ( $\text{Log}_{10} = 0.396$ ) which represents an interpolated estimate of 1494  
1914 EU/ml (approximately 1500 EU/ml). Based on this observation, the anticipated antibody  
1915 concentration for S3, S5 and S6 was 375 EU/ml, 93.75 EU/ml, and 46.87 EU/ml, respectively.  
1916 The percent recovery for S1 ranged from 1456.5 - 1699.5 EU/ml (97.1% - 113.3%). The percent  
1917 recovery for S3 ranged from 367.87 – 374.62 EU/ml (98.1% - 99.9%). The percent recovery for  
1918 S5 ranged from 88.2 – 89.62 EU/ml (94.1% - 95.6 %). The percent recovery for S6 ranged from  
1919 43.92 – 46.87 (93.7% - 100%). On the basis of the criterion established by the ICH, the assay is  
1920 accurate between 46 and 1500 EU/ml (94.8 - 105.4 % recovery within this range).

1921 *Linearity*

1922           In the accuracy experiment the mean estimated EU/ml for S1 was approximately 1500  
1923 EU/ml. Table 3.4 displays the predicted EU/ml for each sample (S1 – S7) following twofold  
1924 dilution. Subjecting each sample in triplicate to the anti-PA ELISA demonstrated the assay to be  
1925 linear between 25 and 1,662 EU/ml. The relationship between the EU/ml estimated in each

1926 sample and its dilution is significantly linear ( $R^2 = 0.9988$ ,  $P$  value = 0.000018), Figure 3.2,  
1927 indicating that the assay accurately predicted the estimated EU/ml at each dilution point, Table  
1928 3.4.

### 1929 *Precision*

1930 Table 3.5 summarizes assay variability expressed as % CV at two levels of repeatability:  
1931 intra-plate (triplicate estimates per sample per plate) and intra-day (three assays performed each  
1932 day) and two levels of intermediate precision: inter-day (three days), and inter-analyst (two  
1933 analysts on the same day). The assay displayed acceptable repeatability and intermediate  
1934 precision on the basis of the validity criteria in the 73-1581 EU/ml range establishing this as the  
1935 reliable working range of anti-PA antibodies for this assay, Table 3.7.

### 1936 *Limit of Quantitation*

1937 To define the limit of quantitation, precision was estimated in the range 25-71 EU/ml,  
1938 Table 3.6. The calculated % CV for this range fell well below that of the acceptable % CV for  
1939 repeatability establishing 25 EU/ml as the lowest limit anti-PA antibodies can be reliably  
1940 quantified, Table 3.7.

## 1941 **Discussion**

1942 Protective antigen is a critical component of the protective immune response to *B.*  
1943 *anthracis* infection. The pursuit of new vaccines and monoclonal and polyclonal  
1944 immunotherapies requires an efficient and effective assessment of response during the initial



1945 stages of development. We have developed an anti-PA ELISA designed to measure the immune  
1946 response against PA in horses. This assay was studied using the validation parameters suggested  
1947 by the ICH and CBER and is consistent with other literature where serologic assays have been  
1948 used to verify immunologic responses and vaccine analyses.<sup>425</sup> Acceptance criteria for the  
1949 validation of this assay were based on the performance of similar ELISAs.<sup>426,427</sup> The intended  
1950 use of the assay is to measure antibodies against PA in the plasma of horses vaccinated with  
1951 anthrax vaccines. The vaccine used in this study was the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine  
1952 which produces all three components of the lethal and edema toxins. In addition, other epitopes  
1953 such as exterior spore antigens and bacterial cell surface antigens are present and have been  
1954 shown to induce an immune response in other species. Despite the presence of this diverse  
1955 immune response, it was demonstrated that this ELISA can consistently quantify anti-PA  
1956 antibodies in the plasma of horses. Saturating a plasma mixture with free PA reduced the level of  
1957 binding to that equivalent of naïve horse plasma. When ovalbumin was used as a heterologous  
1958 antigen in the solid phase of the ELISA, plasma from horses immunized against anthrax  
1959 demonstrated negligible reactivity indicating that the response seen to PA in this assay was not  
1960 the result of non-specific binding.

1961           The results of the accuracy and precision assessment fell well below the guidelines  
1962 established by the ICH indicating that this ELISA is both highly repeatable and robust for the  
1963 range of samples assayed. Some sources recommend a lower standard of 10% CV necessary to  
1964 define suitable precision. The samples evaluated in the precision assessment represented  
1965 approximately 100, 80, 50 and 20% of maximal activity. Because both the highest and lowest

1966 concentrations of antibody sampled in the present study were demonstrated to be suitably  
1967 repeatable the true working range of EU/ml was not fully established. Often extremes in  
1968 antibody concentration show less precise measurements due to non-uniform error in the assay  
1969 and further evaluation will be necessary to determine what these levels are for this assay.

1970           The limit of quantitation can be defined as the assay's measure of sensitivity or capacity  
1971 to measure the smallest amount of target analyte. In the present study the lowest derived  
1972 antibody concentration was estimated to be 25 EU/ml, which displayed acceptable repeatability.  
1973 The limit of detection is a means of establishing background levels of reactivity in the plasma of  
1974 horses expected to be naïve to *B. anthracis*. Based on the results of several repeated assays of  
1975 two normal horse plasma samples, the lowest detectable anti-PA antibody concentration that was  
1976 statistically significant from background levels was 2.25 EU/ml. The incorporation of three  
1977 standard deviations above the mean OD value for NHP yields a 99% confidence level in the  
1978 difference observed.

1979           Based on these observations, the results of this study validate the anti-PA ELISA  
1980 described herein ensuring its usefulness in accurately and reliably assessing the antibody  
1981 response to PA in the plasma of horses.

1982

1983 **Table 3.1a Specificity: Free rPA successfully binds with anti-PA antibodies and reduces the**  
 1984 **interaction of the antibodies with bound rPA.** REF plasma was pre-incubated with free rPA  
 1985 for 1 hour and then subjected to the anti-PA ELISA alongside naïve plasma (NHP) and un-  
 1986 treated REF plasma in uncoated wells.

Sample ID	Sample Pre-treatment	Dilution in well	Mean OD values	p value
REF	Pre-incubated with rPA	1:500	0.076	0.21*
NHP	None	1:50	0.064	0.092**
REF	Uncoated Wells	1:500	0.056	

1987 \* p value of significance between REF pre-incubated with rPA and NHP

1988 \*\* p value of significance between control wells and NHP

1989

1990 **Table 3.1b Specificity: Blocking a microtiter plate with a milk based blocking agent does**  
 1991 **not significantly alter the OD values obtained.** Two microtiter plates were coated with rPA.  
 1992 Following overnight incubation Plate I was treated with a blocking agent while Plate II was left  
 1993 untreated. A sample of REF was serially diluted in duplicate and subjected to the anti-PA ELISA  
 1994 with each plate to determine if a blocking step induced significant changes in OD values.

Sample ID	Sample Pre-treatment	Dilution in well	OD values (mean)		p values*
			Plate I	Plate II	
REF	None	1:500	1.367	1.217	0.021
		1:1000	0.918	1.045	0.166
		1:2000	0.755	0.063	0.345
		1:4000	0.601	0.823	0.366
		1:8000	0.490	0.735	0.343
		1:16000	0.364	0.569	0.295
		1:32000	0.221	0.391	0.381
		1:64000	0.152	0.266	0.380
		1:128000	0.106	0.161	0.413
		1:256000	0.087	0.120	0.374
		1:512000	0.078	0.100	0.444
		1:1024000	0.061	0.186	0.207

1995 \*p value of significance between OD values obtained from each plate

1996

1997 **Table 3.1c Specificity: REF plasma specifically binds to rPA coated wells but does not bind**  
 1998 **ovalbumin coated wells.**

Sample ID	Plate coating	Dilution in well	OD values (mean) *	p values
REF	Ovalbumin	1:500	0.041	0.482
REF	rPA	1:500	1.292	
NHP	Ovalbumin	1:50	0.038	

1999 \*combined means from blocked and unblocked plates.

2000

2001 **Table 3.2a Limit of Detection**

2002 Two NHP samples were subjected to repeated anti-PA ELISA to establish the lowest limit of

2003 detection for this assay.

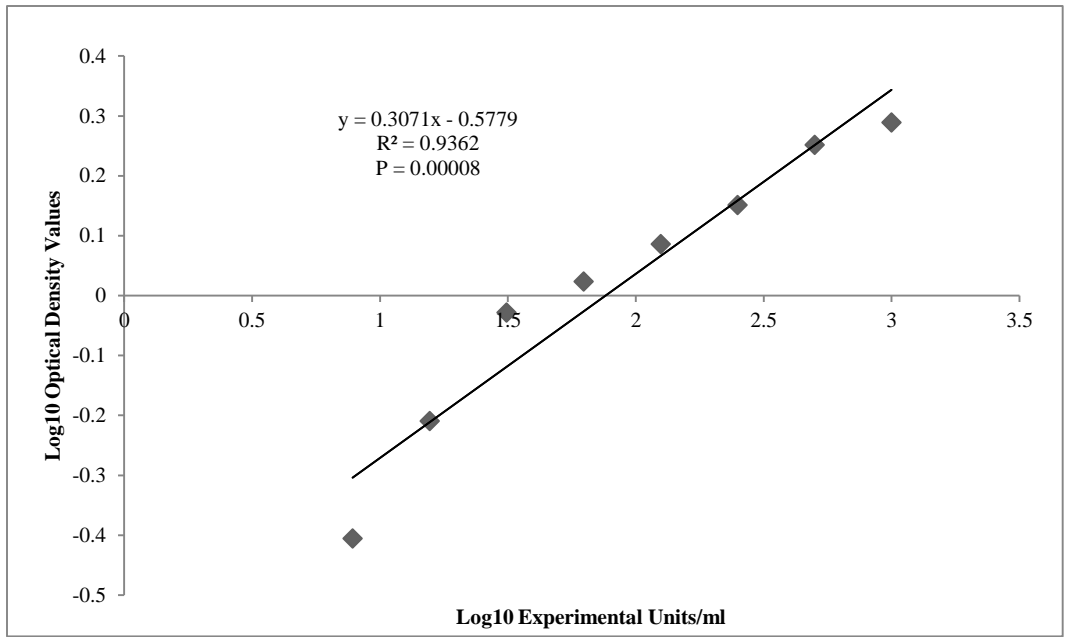
Day	Sample	OD Values	
		Plate I	Plate II
1	1	0.032	0.025
		0.029	0.028
		0.031	0.026
	2	0.033	0.028
		0.031	0.022
		0.023	0.015
2	1	0.040	0.036
		0.040	0.029
		0.035	0.018
	2	0.079	0.056
		0.063	0.062
		0.055	0.076
3	1	0.085	0.092
		0.090	0.056
		0.086	0.045
	2	0.048	0.062
		0.046	0.063
		0.043	0.061
4	1	0.045	0.072
		0.045	0.07
		0.041	0.069
	2	0.034	0.044
		0.032	0.042
		0.025	0.043
5	1	0.035	0.057
		0.032	0.052
		0.035	0.056
	2	0.041	0.028
		0.028	0.036
		0.021	0.042
Overall Mean		0.045	
St. Dev		0.019	
Mean NHP OD value = $0.045 \pm 0.019$			
LOD = $0.045 + (3 \times 0.019) = 0.102$			

2004 **Table 3.2b Interpolated Limit of Detection**

2005 The interpolated limit of detection for the anti-PA ELISA was derived from the addition of the  
 2006 mean OD value for naïve plasma and three standard deviations and the interpolation of this value  
 2007 from the titration curve (**Figure 1**). This measure represents the lowest effective assessment of  
 2008 anti-PA antibody titers (EU/ml) in this assay.

Mean NHP + 3 STD OD Value:	0.102
Log <sub>10</sub> (0.102):	-0.9914
Interpolated EU/ml:	0.045 EU/ml
Corrected for dilution:	2.25 EU/ml

2009  
 2010



2011 **Figure 3.1 Titration Curve**

2012 The titration curve was drawn using individual OD values from 24 assays (8 assays in triplicate).  
 2013

2014 **Table 3.3a Accuracy**

2015 The mean OD value for S1 after 9 assays was 2.494 (Log<sub>10</sub> = 0.396). The mean OD value was  
 2016 interpolated to represent an estimated 1494 EU/ml.

Mean S1 OD Value	2.494 <sup>2017</sup>
Log <sub>10</sub> OD	0.396 <sup>2018</sup>
Interpolated Log <sub>10</sub> (EU/ml)	3.174 <sup>2019</sup>
Assigned EU/ml for S1	1494 (~1500) <sup>2020</sup> 2021

2022

2023 **Table 3.3b Accuracy**

2024 Units per ml of each of four freshly made samples (S1, S3, S5 and S6 equivalents to the linearity  
 2025 assay) were estimated by anti-PA ELISA. Each sample was assayed in triplicate in each of three  
 2026 plates. Accuracy is expressed as percent (%) recovery: mean estimated units per ml/assigned  
 2027 units per ml x 100.

	Replicates	Target sample (EU/ml)			
		S1 (1500)	S3 (375)	S5 (93.75)	S6 (46.87)
		% Recovery	% Recovery	% Recovery	% Recovery
Plate 1	1	98.9	98.1	95.0	98.1
	2	106.9	99.1	94.1	98.5
	3	107.4	98.1	95.3	95.2
Plate 2	4	113.3	98.1	94.4	94.1
	5	107.2	99.9	95.6	95.9
	6	102.2	99.5	94.1	98.5
Plate 3	7	113.0	99.1	95.9	97.7
	8	102.5	98.1	95.6	100.0
	9	97.1	99.7	93.8	93.7
Mean		105.4	98.9	94.8	96.8

2028 **Table 3.4 Linearity**

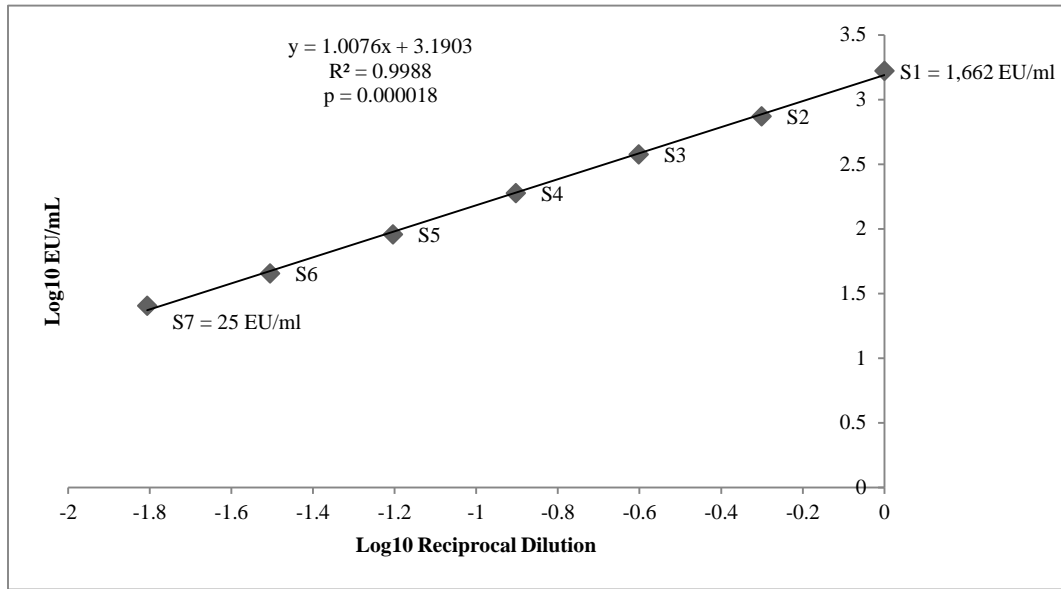
2029 Comparison of the predicted EU/ml and the assay estimated EU/ml of twofold serially diluted  
2030 samples.

Sample ID	Predicted EU/ml	Estimated EU/ml
S1	1500	1662
S2	750	742
S3	375	376
S4	188	189
S5	94	91
S6	47	45
S7	23	25

2031



2032



2033  
2034

2035 **Figure 3.2 Linearity**

2036 An unknown plasma sample (S1) was serially diluted twofold (S2 – S7) and subjected to the  
2037 anti-PA ELISA in triplicate. The observed OD values were used to interpolate the estimated  
2038 EU/ml for each sample from the titration curve. The log<sub>10</sub> EU/ml was then plotted against the  
2039 log<sub>10</sub> of the reciprocal dilution to determine if a linear relationship existed between the estimated  
2040 EU/ml and the dilution factor.

2041

2042 **Table 3.5 Precision**

2043 Results of repeated analyses of three samples were compared across multiple plates performed

2044 on multiple dates by two analysts to determine the repeatability and robustness of the assay.

2045 Results are expressed as %CV (SD/mean x 100).

Sample	Mean (EU/ml)	%CV						Inter-analyst
		Analyst 1			Analyst 2			
		Intra-plate	Intra-day	Inter-day	Intra-plate	Intra-day	Inter-day	
S1	1581	3.3	7.0	9.0	12.6	14.0	15.7	13.1
		4.5			1.3			
		3.9			9.8			
		11.1	9.4	11.1	1.3	10.1	11.1	
		9.3			7.7			
		4.0			1.7			
		0.9	7.7	11.1	6.1	16.4	11.1	
		11.1			15.3			
		5.3			16.6			
S3	323	15.9	12.3	10.4	9.2	11.8	10.4	10.5
		7.2			1.3			
		1.9			9.9			
		11.0	9.4	11.0	11.2	7.8	11.0	
		0.3			6.7			
		5.4			2.8			
		1.7	8.3	12.0	6.3	10.5	12.0	
		12.0			16.8			
		0.9			7.5			
S5	73	17.6	13.8	10.9	3.7	8.2	10.7	10.8
		9.3			2.5			
		4.9			12.0			
		4.0	9.7	6.1	3.0	5.9	10.3	
		6.1			3.1			
		10.3			9.3			
		1.2	4.4	5.8	1.4	12.8	1.2	
		5.8			15.1			
		2.5			7.7			

2046

2047 **Table 3.6 Limit of Quantitation**

2048 Three samples showing relatively low antibody titers were analyzed across multiple plates  
 2049 performed on multiple days to determine the lowest antibody concentration that demonstrated  
 2050 adequate repeatability. Results are expressed as %CV (SD/mean x 100).

Sample	Mean (EU/ml)	% CV		
		Intra-plate	Intra-day	Inter-day
S5	71	8.1	10.5	10.2
		9.7		
		12.7		
		3.7	10.1	
		10.9		
		10.4		
		4.8	9.1	
		6.2		
		7.5		
		7.3	5.6	6.6
S6	44	3.8		
		4.0		
		5.7	6.5	
		3.8		
		7.4		
		5.2	6.3	
		6.2		
		6.6		
		1.7	5.5	7.0
		10.4		
S7	25	3.0		
		7.0	7.6	
		5.8		
		9.7		
		4.8	7.3	
		5.0		
		6.2		

2051

2052

2053 **Table 3.7 Acceptance Criteria and Characteristics of the anti-PA Equine ELISA**

2054 Summary of the performance characteristics of the anti-PA ELISA and the acceptance criteria set  
 2055 forth by the ICH.

Assay Characteristics	Acceptance Criteria	Results
Precision-Repeatability		
Intra-plate	% CV < 20	< 17.6
Inter-plate		< 16.4
Intermediate Precision		
Days	% CV < 25	< 15.7
Analyst	% CV < 30	< 13.1
Accuracy	80 – 120 %	94.8 – 105.4 %
Limit of Detection	—	2.25 EU/ml
Limit of Quantification	—	25 EU/ml
Linearity	—	Working Range: 25 and 1,662 EU/ml $R^2 = 0.9988$ $P$ value = 0.000018

2056

2057

2058  
2059  
2060  
2061  
2062  
2063  
2064  
2065  
2066  
2067  
2068  
2069  
2070  
2071  
2072  
2073  
2074  
2075  
2076  
2077  
2078

**Chapter 4:**

**Assessment of protective antigen and toxin neutralizing antibody titers in hyper-immune plasma derived from horses immunized against *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain**

Marc Caldwell, DVM<sup>a</sup>; Terri Hathcock, MS<sup>b</sup>; Kenny V. Brock, DVM, MS, PhD<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup>Department of Large Animal Clinical Sciences, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN

<sup>c</sup> Department of Pathobiology, Auburn University, Auburn, AL

**Abstract**

The *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine is currently licensed for use in livestock species in the United States and other countries. Sterne strain is an attenuated toxigenic acapsular (pXO1<sup>+</sup>, pXO2<sup>-</sup>) strain of *B. anthracis* that is capable of inducing strong protective responses against protective antigen (PA), lethal factor (LF) and edema factor (EF). Of these antigens numerous natural and experimental infection studies indicate that PA is the immunodominant antigen. In this study, the initial evaluation of the protective capacity of plasma from horses immunized against Sterne strain spore and recombinant PA (rPA) vaccines was determined. Antibody responses to PA were evaluated in an indirect ELISA and were found to be as high as 1:512,000 in some horses. The geometric mean titers for horses immunized with spore vaccine alone, for horses immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with rPA, for horses immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with twice the volume of spore vaccine, and for horses immunized with rPA alone was 1:43,031 (SEM±3995, CI 95% 1:35,675 – 1:51,906), 1:213,027 (SEM±32,252, CI 95% 1:152,849 – 1:296,897), 1:83,912 (SEM±16,818, CI 95% 1:54,046 – 1:129,971) and 1:34,912 (SEM±13,961, CI 95% 1:15,035 – 1:81,066),

2079 respectively. Neutralizing antibodies were assessed using mouse macrophage J774A.1 cells in an  
2080 LF-induced cytotoxicity assay. Several horses developed neutralizing titers as high 1:1,024. The  
2081 geometric mean neutralizing antibody titers for horses immunized with the Sterne strain spore  
2082 vaccine alone, for horses immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with rPA, for horses  
2083 immunized with the spore vaccine then immunized with twice the volume of spore vaccine, and  
2084 for horses immunized with rPA alone was 1: 130 (SEM±2.26, CI 95% 1:126 – 1:135), 1: 964  
2085 (SEM±56, CI 95% 1:849 – 1:1,094), 1: 683 (SEM ± 171, CI 95% 1:408 – 1:1,143) and 1:478  
2086 (SEM ± 5.5, CI 95% 1:9.5 – 1:68), respectively. Overall, this study demonstrates that plasma  
2087 derived from horses immunized against *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and rPA provides strong *in*  
2088 *vitro* correlates of protection and has the potential for further investigation as passive  
2089 immunotherapy in *in vivo* infection models.

## 2090 **Introduction**

2091 *Bacillus anthracis* is the causative agent of anthrax. *B. anthracis* induces virulence in  
2092 large part through the production of three toxin polypeptides, lethal factor (LF), edema factor  
2093 (EF) and protective antigen (PA); all encoded on the pXO1 plasmid. These proteins combine in  
2094 binary fashion to form two toxins, lethal toxin and edema toxin.<sup>401</sup> The common protein subunit  
2095 of these toxins is PA, an 83 kDa receptor binding component that mediates cellular entry of the  
2096 toxin effector molecules.<sup>402</sup> Targeting PA is key to protection and has been demonstrated in  
2097 several *B. anthracis* toxin and live virulent challenges.<sup>428-432</sup> Targeting PA is key to protection  
2098 and has been demonstrated in several *B. anthracis* toxin and live virulent challenges.<sup>380,397,433-436</sup>

2099 An equine source polyclonal hyper-immune plasma targeted against *B. anthracis* was  
2100 developed. Because the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain possesses the pXO1 plasmid all three effector  
2101 molecules of the toxin are produced during logarithmic growth. Historically, potency tests for *B.*  
2102 *anthracis* vaccines and passive immunotherapy involved the lethal challenge of passively or  
2103 actively immunized guinea pigs with a virulent strain of *B. anthracis*.<sup>437</sup> These bioassays are  
2104 expensive and handling fully virulent *B. anthracis* requires specialized containment facilities.<sup>438</sup>  
2105 Therefore well-defined immunogenicity assay were needed to overcome this challenge and  
2106 provide consistent and accurate assessment of the immune response of horses during the  
2107 immunization process. Immunogenicity assays are designed to assess antibody response against a  
2108 set dose of antigen. Two types of immunogenicity assays have been developed for the  
2109 assessment of anti-PA antibodies in other species; antigen-specific ELISA and toxin  
2110 neutralization assays.<sup>439,440</sup> In this study plasma from immunized horses was evaluated in each of  
2111 these assays for the presence of PA specific antibodies and toxin neutralizing activity.

## 2112 **Materials and Methods**

### 2113 *Antigens*

2114 The *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine used was the commercially available  
2115 Anthrax Spore Vaccine, licensed for use in equine (Colorado Serum Company, Denver, CO).  
2116 Each vial was maintained at 4<sup>0</sup> C protected from light until ready to administer. The recombinant  
2117 protective antigen (rPA) and recombinant lethal factor (rLF) was obtained from List Biological  
2118 Laboratories (Campbell, CA). Each vial was reconstituted with 1.0 ml of sterile distilled water to  
2119 create a concentration of 1 µg/µl. Following reconstitution, the antigen was aliquoted in 20 µl

2120 volumes and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use. The rPA vaccine was prepared fresh the day of  
2121 immunization as follows; 100 µg of rPA was thawed at 4<sup>0</sup> C overnight and combined with 500 µl  
2122 Freund's incomplete adjuvant then homogenized and drawn into a syringe.

### 2123 *Plasma Samples*

2124 Plasma was obtained monthly from horses immunized with the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain  
2125 vaccine and/or rPA homogenized with Freund's incomplete adjuvant. At each sampling up to 20  
2126 ml of whole blood was collected into syringes pre-loaded with sodium citrate as an  
2127 anticoagulant. Each sample was centrifuged at 5000 x g for 30 minutes. The plasma was then  
2128 aspirated from the peripheral blood cells and divided into 2 ml aliquots and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until  
2129 ready to use.

2130 Four hyper-immune plasma samples were randomly chosen from the samples collected  
2131 after 56 days (representing fully primed individuals based on anti-PA ELISA results) and pooled  
2132 to make a reference plasma sample (REF PLAS) to develop a titration curve and serve as the  
2133 positive standard for each subsequent assay.

2134 Plasma used for negative standards were obtained from two horses with no known  
2135 exposure or history of immunization against *B. anthracis* (Normal horse plasma, NHP). Samples  
2136 were collected and processed as described for principal samples.

### 2137 *Spore Vaccine Immunization Protocol*

2138 The following description is provided in outline format in Table 4.1. Each horse was  
2139 immunized with 1.0 ml of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine administered subcutaneously



2140 (SC) in the neck. A booster dose was administered SC on Day 21. Following these initial doses  
2141 two horses were randomly selected with the aid of computer software and continued to be  
2142 administered 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC in the neck monthly from Day 56 to Day 155, while the  
2143 remaining two horses received 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM in the neck at the same time periods.  
2144 Whole blood samples were collected in sodium citrate from each horse on Days 0, 21, 56 and  
2145 monthly thereafter, and plasma was separated stored at  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$  until ready for analysis.

2146           On Day 185, one horse from each subset was randomly selected to continue  
2147 immunizations monthly as described. These immunizations occurred monthly from Day 185  
2148 until Day 366. For the remaining two horses immunization was withheld in an attempt to  
2149 determine the persistence of antibody titers over time.

2150 *2X Spore Vaccine Immunization Protocol*

2151           Following the initial immunization protocol, two horses that had previously been  
2152 immunized against *B. anthracis* according to the schedule above were randomly selected to  
2153 receive an increased dosage of spore vaccine in an attempt to maximize antibody titer response.  
2154 Each horse was immunized with 2.0 ml of spore vaccine administered SC in the neck. A second  
2155 immunization was administered 14 days after the initial dose and then monthly thereafter for a  
2156 total of six immunizations, Table 4.2.

2157 *Recombinant Protective Antigen Immunization Protocol in Primed Horses*

2158           Following the initial immunization regime, the remaining two horses that had previously  
2159 been immunized against *B. anthracis* were randomly selected to receive immunization with 100

2160  $\mu\text{g}$  of *B. anthracis* recombinant protective antigen (rPA). First, each horse received a single  
2161 booster immunization of 1.0 ml *B. anthracis* spore vaccine. Thirty days following the booster  
2162 immunization, each horse was administered 100  $\mu\text{g}$  of rPA homogenized with Freund's  
2163 incomplete adjuvant intradermally (ID) in the skin along either side of the neck. Intradermal  
2164 administration of 100  $\mu\text{g}$  rPA was repeated monthly for six total immunizations, Table 4.3.

#### 2165 *Recombinant Protective Antigen Immunization Protocol in Non-Primed Horses*

2166 To determine the ability of rPA alone to elicit specific antibody titers against *B.*  
2167 *anthracis*, two naïve Percheron horses were obtained and determined to be healthy and free of  
2168 infectious diseases as outlined above. A primary immunization of 100  $\mu\text{g}$  of rPA homogenized  
2169 with Freund's incomplete adjuvant was administered ID in the neck of each horse. Booster  
2170 immunizations were administered approximately 30 days apart for a total of six total  
2171 immunizations, Table 4.4.

#### 2172 *Quantification of anti-PA antibodies*

2173 Wells of an Immulon 2 HB, 96-well round bottom ELISA plate (Southern Biological,  
2174 Birmingham, AL) were coated with 100  $\mu\text{l}$  of a rPA coating solution (rPA diluted at 1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  in a  
2175 0.01 M PBS solution, pH 7.4). Plates were sealed with parafilm and incubated overnight (16 +/-  
2176 2 hours) refrigerated at 4<sup>0</sup> C.

2177 Following antigen coating the plates were washed three times using 300  $\mu\text{l}$ /well of  
2178 washing buffer (0.01 M PBS and 0.1% Tween 20) each wash. Principal, REF PLAS, and NHP  
2179 samples were thawed at 4<sup>0</sup>C and kept on ice until ready to use. Principal samples were pre-

2180 diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer and 200 µl were added to wells of the first row and performed in  
2181 triplicate. Reference plasma samples were also pre-diluted 1:500 in dilution buffer and 200 µl  
2182 were added to two wells of the first row. Normal horse plasma samples were diluted 1:50 in  
2183 dilution buffer and 200 µl were added to the remaining two wells in the first row. One hundred  
2184 microliters of dilution buffer (0.01 M PBS, 5% goat serum, and 0.5% Tween 20) was added to  
2185 all remaining wells. Twofold serial dilutions were made across the plate by mixing and  
2186 transferring 100 µl of diluted antibodies between adjacent rows. The plate was sealed and  
2187 incubated at 37<sup>0</sup> C for 1 hour.

2188           After the plate was washed, 100 µl of 1:1000 dilution of goat anti-horse antibody  
2189 conjugated to HRP (Jackson Immunoresearch Lab, INC, West Grove, PA) in dilution buffer was  
2190 added to each well and the plate was sealed and incubated again at 37<sup>0</sup>C for 1 hour.

2191           Following three additional post-incubation washes as above, 100 µl of the substrate  
2192 ABTS (2,2'-Azinobis [3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic acid]-diammonium salt, Thermo  
2193 Scientific, Rockford, IL) was added to each well. The plate was sealed and incubated in the dark  
2194 for 20 minutes. Optical Density (OD) was determined at dual wavelength (405 and 550 nm) in a  
2195 Bio-Tek Elx800 plate reader (Bio-Tek Instruments, Inc. Winooski, VT).

2196 *Antibody mediated neutralization of LF-induced lysis*

2197           Mouse macrophage J774A.1 cells (ATCC TIB-67) were obtained from American Type  
2198 Culture Collection (Manassas, VA) and grown in high-glucose Dulbecco's modified Eagle  
2199 medium containing l-glutamine and supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum and 1%

2200 penicillin-streptomycin (10,000 U/ml penicillin G sodium and 10,000 µg/ml streptomycin  
2201 sulfate).

2202 For neutralization assays, two-fold dilutions of equine plasma (starting at 1:32) were  
2203 prepared in supplemented DMEM. Recombinant protein solutions of rPA (1.0 µg/ml) and rLF  
2204 (1.0 µg/ml) were added to the serum dilutions, and the mixtures were incubated for 10 minutes at  
2205 37°C with shaking. J774A.1 cells were diluted to  $2 \times 10^6$  cells/ml, and 100 µl was added to a  
2206 sterile 96-well flat-bottomed tissue culture plate and incubated for 2 hours. The media was  
2207 removed from the cells and replaced with 100 µl of the serum dilutions containing PA plus LF,  
2208 and the plates were incubated for 4 hours at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. alamarBlue (80% solution in  
2209 Hanks balanced salt solution; Trek Diagnostic Systems Inc., Westlake, OH) was added at 10% of  
2210 the well volume, and the cells were incubated for 20 h at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. Absorbance at 570  
2211 nm (to detect oxidized alamarBlue) and 595 nm (to detect reduced alamarBlue) was measured  
2212 using a Bio-Tek Elx800 plate reader, and the conversion of oxidized alamarBlue to its reduced  
2213 form was used to determine metabolic activity. Cells lysed by the addition of 10 µl of Triton X-  
2214 100 were used as negative controls. Assays were performed in triplicate.

#### 2215 *Statistical Analysis*

2216 Descriptive statistics were compiled in either Microsoft Excel® 2010 or IBM SPSS  
2217 Statistics version 21. Geometric mean titers were calculated by logarithmic transformation and  
2218 group means were compared by either repeated measures ANOVA or student's T test by time  
2219 point. All statistical evaluations were conducted using IBM SPSS Statistics version 21.

## Results

2220

### 2221 *Induction of PA antibodies*

2222           The *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine induced a rapid anti-PA antibody response in  
2223 each immunized horse, Figure 4.1. The combined geometric mean titer for each time point  
2224 indicated a plateau of antibody induction was reached following the third administration of the  
2225 vaccine with no significant increase in antibody production beyond day 50. ( $p = 0.171$ ), Figure  
2226 4.2. In order to determine if the plateau of anti-PA antibody titers could be increased, alternate  
2227 immunization strategies were investigated. Two of the previously immunized horses received a  
2228 priming dose of 1.0 ml spore vaccine followed by monthly immunization of 100  $\mu$ g of  
2229 recombinant PA homogenized with incomplete Freund's adjuvant and administered ID as  
2230 described previously. Another two previously immunized horses received a priming dose of 1.0  
2231 ml spore vaccine followed by monthly immunization of 2.0 ml spore administered SC, as  
2232 described previously. Finally, two horses, naïve to *B. anthracis* and its toxins were immunized  
2233 with rPA only. Each dose of 100  $\mu$ g of rPA was adjuvanted with Freund's incomplete adjuvant  
2234 and administered ID at monthly intervals.

2235           Each of the horses that had been previously immunized against *B. anthracis* displayed  
2236 relatively high resting anti-PA antibody titers. In addition, following the priming dose a rapid  
2237 anamnestic response and elevation in titer levels was observed. These horses trended toward  
2238 higher geometric mean titers when compared to horses immunized with rPA alone. However,  
2239 there were no significant differences among any the alternative vaccination responses, Figure  
2240 4.3.

2241 *Antibody-mediated lethal toxin neutralization*

2242 For quantification of neutralizing antibodies an assay utilizing J774A.1 mouse  
2243 macrophages was modified from that previously described by Hanna *et al.*<sup>441</sup> Lethal toxin  
2244 induces cell lysis in J774A.1 cells, but this effect has been shown to be ameliorated in the  
2245 presence of protective antibodies.<sup>439</sup> In this study, protection from lethal toxin induced lysis was  
2246 determined by monitoring the reduction of alamarBlue as an indicator of cell health and  
2247 metabolic activity. Healthy cells internalize alamarBlue and convert its oxidized form (which is  
2248 blue in color) to the reduced form (which is fluorescent pink). The extent to which alamarBlue  
2249 has been reduced can be measured spectrophotometrically and used to infer the level of cell  
2250 viability following treatment with lethal toxin.

2251 To assess the ability of the hyper-immune plasma to protect cells from lysis, they were  
2252 treated with lethal toxin (rLF + rPA) that had been pre-incubated in the presence or absence of  
2253 the plasma. These preparations of lethal toxin or lethal toxin plus hyper-immune plasma were  
2254 then overlaid on J774A.1 cell monolayers and incubated for 4 hours. Titers were considered  
2255 protective or neutralizing at the reciprocal dilutions that provided at least 50% protection. In  
2256 order to ascertain the contribution that neutralization of PA or LF had on the overall protection of  
2257 the cells the concentrations of LF were varied.

2258 When J774A.1 cells were incubated in the presence of lethal toxin, but not plasma  
2259 approximately 60% cell lysis occurred when LF was added at 0.1 µg/ml and PA was added at 1.0  
2260 µg/ml, Table 4.5. At higher LF concentrations (0.5 µg/ml, 1.0 µg/ml, and 2.0 µg/ml) and PA at  
2261 1.0 µg/ml, cell lysis approached 100%. No lysis was observed when either PA or LF was

2262 incubated individually with cells regardless of concentration. When LF and PA were combined  
2263 at 0.1 µg/ml and 1.0 µg/ml, respectively, and incubated with hyper-immune plasma a higher  
2264 neutralizing titer was observed than for the plasma samples incubated with higher concentrations  
2265 of LF (0.5 and 1.0 µg/ml), Figure 4.4. When LF was added at 2.0 µg/ml lower neutralizing  
2266 antibody titers were achieved and indicating that protection from LF mediated lysis could be  
2267 overwhelmed.

2268         To determine if pre-incubation of the plasma sample with the lethal toxin was necessary  
2269 for toxin neutralization, a subset of randomly selected plasma samples were added to media  
2270 containing 1.0 µg/ml LF and 1.0 µg/ml PA at 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 hours after toxin exposure to the  
2271 cells, Figure 4.5. Protection was conveyed only for 0 hr and some 1 hr time points suggesting  
2272 that toxin mediated lysis occurs relatively rapidly and rescue from lysis had a defined time limit.

2273         Plasma samples collected from each horse at serial time points were subjected to the  
2274 toxin neutralization assay under the most sensitive conditions (1.0 µg/ml LF and 1.0 µg/ml PA)  
2275 to determine the neutralizing antibody titer over time (Figure 4.6). Comparison of horses  
2276 immunized with the alternate dosages and antigens revealed a pattern similar to that found for  
2277 anti-PA antibody titers. Horses with previous immunity and then immunized with either 2.0 ml  
2278 of spore vaccine or 100 µg of rPA displayed a trend toward higher toxin neutralizing titers but  
2279 did not elicit significantly higher differences compared to horses immunized with rPA alone,  
2280 Figure 4.7.

2281

## Discussion

2282  
2283  
2284  
2285  
2286  
2287  
2288  
2289  
2290  
2291  
2292  
2293  
2294  
2295  
2296  
2297  
2298  
2299  
2300  
2301  
2302

The use of immunoassays in the field of anthrax vaccine development and characterizations of immunotherapeutics has been well studied in laboratory animal models. However, very little information exists concerning their use in horses. In this study we have modified and adapted an ELISA for the quantitation of anti-PA immunoglobulins and a cell culture toxin neutralization assay for horses vaccinated with the Sterne strain spore vaccine.

The *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vaccine has been shown to induce immune responses against several critical antigens including the effector molecules of the anthrax toxin and spore surface antigens. This diverse immune response has also been shown to be fully protective in both toxin mediated challenge models and fully virulent anthrax infection in several species. In this study, the Sterne strain vaccine produced a strong and rapid anti-PA antibody response in the horses that were immunized with it, yet beyond 50 days there appears to have been no significant elevation in titers regardless of the frequent re-administration of the antigens. *B. anthracis* Sterne strain, while attenuated, is a fully toxigenic strain that produces all 3 toxins molecules during exponential growth phase of the bacterium. The immunizing dose according to the manufacturer recommendations contains  $1 \times 10^6$  spores/ml. For antigenic mass to be delivered to the immune system, these spores must first germinate and reach vegetative growth prior to toxin production. Germination of *B. anthracis* can take up to 7 hours to complete. One possible explanation for the plateauing of anti-PA titers is that each horse developed neutralizing antibodies against the spore capsular antigens after the third immunization that limited the number of spores germinating and effectively reduced antigenic mass for the toxin antigens in subsequent doses. In fact, Welkos *et*



2303 *al.* demonstrated that high anti-PA antibody levels could suppress germination of spores and  
2304 improve macrophage clearance, thus preventing infections. In order to circumvent a potentially  
2305 overwhelming response to the spore antigens we immunized two of these horses with 100 µg of  
2306 rPA and two horses with  $2 \times 10^6$  spores (2.0 ml spore vaccine). Both treatments resulted in  
2307 significantly higher mean anti-PA titers from previous mean titers for each individual suggesting  
2308 that neutralization of the spore and reduced antigen presentation was likely limiting the  
2309 continued increase of circulating anti-PA antibodies. The elevation in antibody titers observed in  
2310 horses receiving  $2 \times 10^6$  spores suggests that the increased dose permitted some spores to escape  
2311 neutralization and produce vegetative bacilli and enough toxins to achieve a successful  
2312 anamnestic response. It is not clear whether this also resulted in prolonged clearance of the  
2313 bacterium.

2314           Immunization of horses with recombinant PA alone failed to achieve the same level of  
2315 anti-PA titers as horses receiving the spore vaccine. One evident factor influencing this result is  
2316 the lack of previous immunity in horses immunized with rPA compared to that in horses  
2317 receiving spore vaccine. However, when only the initial immunization time points for horses  
2318 receiving 1.0 ml of spore vaccine were compared to those time points for horses receiving rPA  
2319 alone a significantly higher mean anti-PA titer in rPA immunized horses was revealed. This  
2320 suggests that continued immunization of 100 µg rPA could achieve similar anti-PA titers in time.  
2321 Because immunization with rPA is an inactivated antigen and antigenic mass and antigen  
2322 presentation is not reliant upon replication it also possible that horses consistently immunized  
2323 with rPA alone would not develop the premature neutralization plateau of antigen as seen with  
2324 horses immunized with the spore vaccine alone.

2325           Assessment of lethal toxin neutralizing titers by the toxin neutralization assay has been  
2326 shown to correlate with survival post experimental challenge in various animal models of  
2327 infection. The immunodominant antigen appears to be PA and titers against PA alone are  
2328 sufficient for protection. If protection was dependent upon neutralization of PA alone, then it is  
2329 theorized that neutralization titers would be unchanged regardless of the concentration of LF.  
2330 However, if LF neutralization was important to overall protection then there would be a  
2331 concentration of LF that could overwhelm the antibody titer in the plasma and result in lysis and  
2332 protection. We observed that toxin neutralizing antibody titers could be altered by varying the  
2333 concentration of the LF in the preparation that was overlaid on J774A.1 cells and that at the  
2334 highest concentration of LF (2.0 µg/ml) titers could be reduced and protection could be  
2335 overcome. This result suggests a concentration dependent effect of LF on cell lysis and that LF  
2336 neutralizing antibodies played a role in the overall protection from lysis. However, to fully  
2337 elucidate this effect depletion of LF antibodies in an individual plasma sample would need to be  
2338 carried out and the same toxin assays conducted for comparison.

2339           This study is the first to quantify toxin neutralizing immunoglobulins in horses  
2340 immunized with a live *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vaccine. A similar plateau in toxin neutralizing  
2341 titers was observed for horses receiving 1.0 ml spore vaccine as seen in anti-PA antibodies.  
2342 Administration of either rPA or 2.0 ml of spore vaccine in horses previously immunized resulted  
2343 in significantly higher toxin neutralizing titers ( $p = 0.002$  and  $p = 0.005$ , respectively). Horses  
2344 immunized with rPA alone displayed significantly lower titers when compared to the initial  
2345 immunization time points for horses receiving 1.0 ml of spore vaccine. This indicates that the

2346 potentially more diverse immune response to the fully toxigenic spore vaccine, including the LF  
2347 and EF antigens, conveyed a greater level of toxin neutralization and protection.

2348           In summary, though not exhaustive in its approach, this study indicates that the  
2349 attenuated *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine can successfully and reliably induce anti-PA  
2350 and lethal toxin neutralizing immunoglobulins in horses. This is an important first step in  
2351 defining the protective capacity of plasma from horses hyper-immunized against *B. anthracis*  
2352 and leads to further investigations in animal infection models and ultimately the development of  
2353 an effective passive immunotherapeutic against anthrax in humans.

2354 **Table 4.1 Immunization protocol for individual horses.** Four horses were immunized with a  
 2355 *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine either subcutaneously or intramuscularly monthly for  
 2356 approximately 1 year. Whole blood samples were collected at predetermined intervals for  
 2357 analysis of specific antibody production.

2358 Horse ID: AX 1		2358 Horse ID: AX 2	
2359 Day	2359 Immunizing Antigen	2359 Day	2359 Immunizing Antigen
2360 1	2360 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2360 1	2360 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2361 21	2361 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2361 21	2361 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2362 56	2362 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2362 56	2362 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2363 91	2363 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2363 91	2363 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2364 119	2364 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2364 119	2364 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2365 154	2365 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2365 154	2365 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2366 184	2366 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2366 184	2366 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2367 210	2367 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2367 210	2367 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2368 249	2368 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2368 249	2368 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2369 275	2369 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2369 275	2369 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
2370 303	2370 1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	2370 303	2370 1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
332	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	332	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM
366	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC	366	1.0 ml spore vaccine IM

2371 **Table 4.2 Immunization protocol for alternative dosing of Sterne strain spore vaccine in**  
 2372 **individual horses.** Following immunization using the initial protocol two horses were randomly  
 2373 selected to receive an increased dose of Sterne strain spore vaccine in an attempt to maximize  
 2374 specific antibody titers.

2375

Horse ID: AX 2	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
41	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
70	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
98	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
126	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
160	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC

2376

Horse ID: AX 4	
Previous Immunized Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
41	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
70	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
98	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
126	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC
160	2.0 ml spore vaccine SC

2380 **Table 4.3 Immunization protocol for previously immunized horses receiving adjuvanted**  
 2381 **recombinant protective antigen.** Following immunization using the initial protocol two horses  
 2382 were randomly selected to receive 100 µg of recombinant protective antigen (rPA) adjuvanted  
 2383 with Freund's incomplete adjuvant administered intradermally in an attempt to maximize  
 2384 specific antibody titers.

2385

Horse ID: AX 1	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	100 µg rPA ID
41	100 µg rPA ID
70	100 µg rPA ID
98	100 µg rPA ID
126	100 µg rPA ID
160	100 µg rPA ID

2386

Horse ID: AX 3	
Previous Immunization Protocol	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	1.0 ml spore vaccine SC
13	100 µg rPA ID
41	100 µg rPA ID
70	100 µg rPA ID
98	100 µg rPA ID
126	100 µg rPA ID
160	100 µg rPA ID

2391 **Table 4.4 Immunization protocol for naïve horses receiving adjuvanted recombinant**  
2392 **protective antigen.** Two previously non-immunized horses were administered 100 µg of rPA  
2393 adjuvanted with Freund’s incomplete adjuvant intradermally in an attempt to maximize specific  
2394 antibody titers.

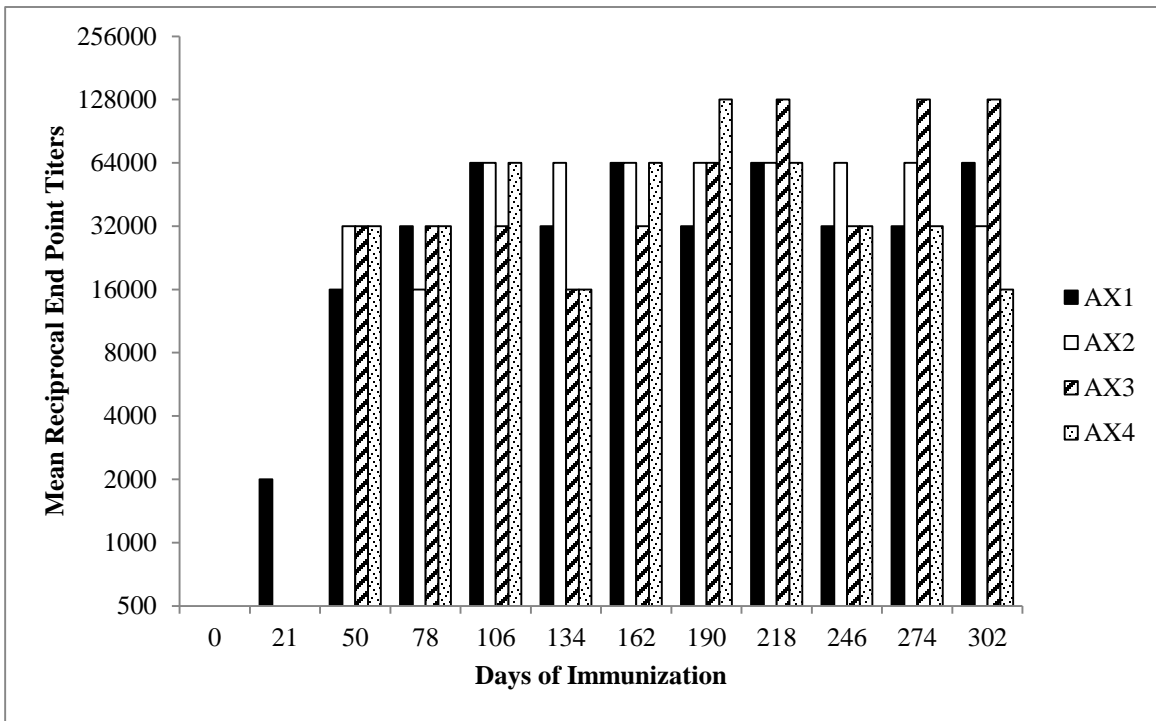
2395

Horse ID: AX 5	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	100 µg rPA ID
13	100 µg rPA ID
41	100 µg rPA ID
70	100 µg rPA ID
98	100 µg rPA ID
126	100 µg rPA ID
160	100 µg rPA ID

2396  
2397  
2398  
2399

Horse ID: AX 6	
<u>Day</u>	<u>Immunizing Antigen</u>
1	100 µg rPA ID
13	100 µg rPA ID
41	100 µg rPA ID
70	100 µg rPA ID
98	100 µg rPA ID
126	100 µg rPA ID
160	100 µg rPA ID

2400

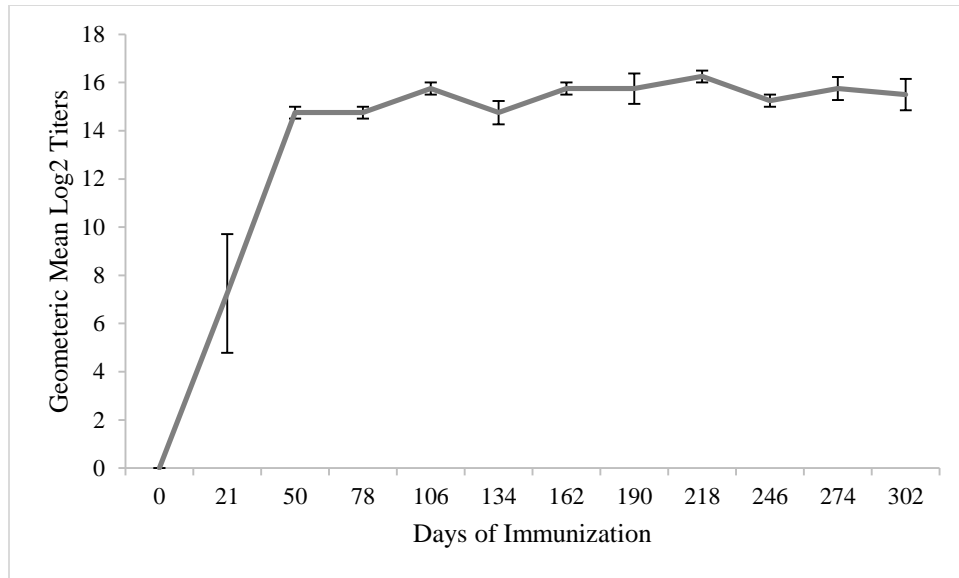


2401

2402 **Figure 4.1 Reciprocal end point titers for horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne strain 34F2**  
 2403 **spore vaccine**

2404 Plasma from each horse was subjected to the anti-PA indirect ELISA for each time point.

2405 Reciprocal titers were achieved from the geometric mean of three replicates of each sample.

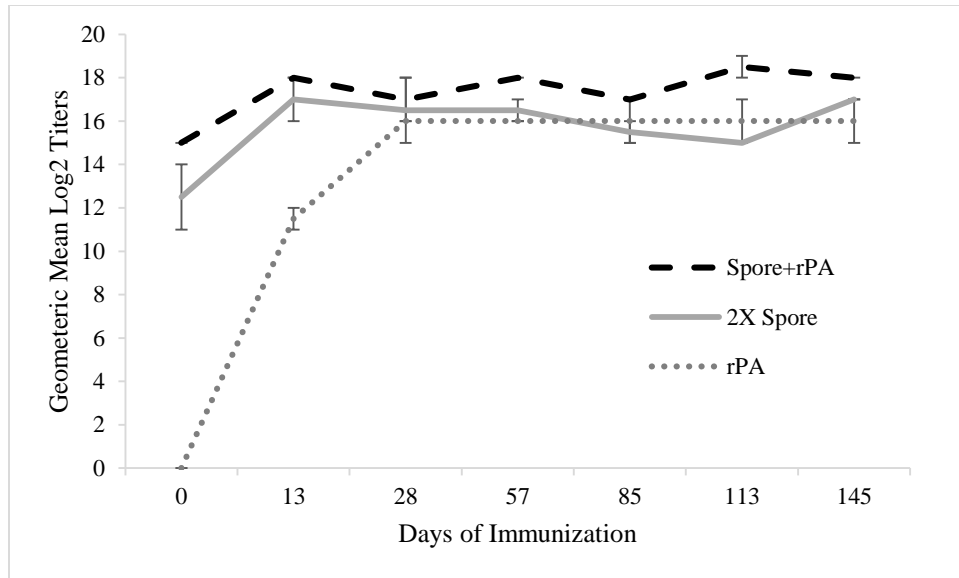


2406

2407 **Figure 4.2 Geometric mean titers in four horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne strain 34F2**  
 2408 **vaccine**

2409 Plasma from each horse was subjected to the anti-PA indirect ELISA for each time point. The  
 2410 geometric mean titers are the means for three replicates of all four horses at each time point. A  
 2411 one way repeated measures ANOVA demonstrated no significant differences in mean titers of  
 2412 each horse ( $p = 0.171$ ).





2413  
 2414 **Figure 4.3 Geometric mean titers for horses immunized with spore vaccine and rPA, 2.0 ml**  
 2415 **spore vaccine, or rPA alone**

2416 The geometric means represent three replicates of two horses in each treatment. The solid line  
 2417 represents horses immunized with twice the dose of *B. anthracis*. The small dotted line  
 2418 represents horses immunized with recombinant protective antigen (rPA). The dashed line  
 2419 represents horses immunized first with the labeled dose of spore vaccine then immunized with  
 2420 rPA. A two-way repeated measures ANOVA demonstrated no significant differences in either  
 2421 vaccine response ( $p = 0.641, 0.213$  and  $1.0$ ) or time ( $p = 0.765$ ).

2422

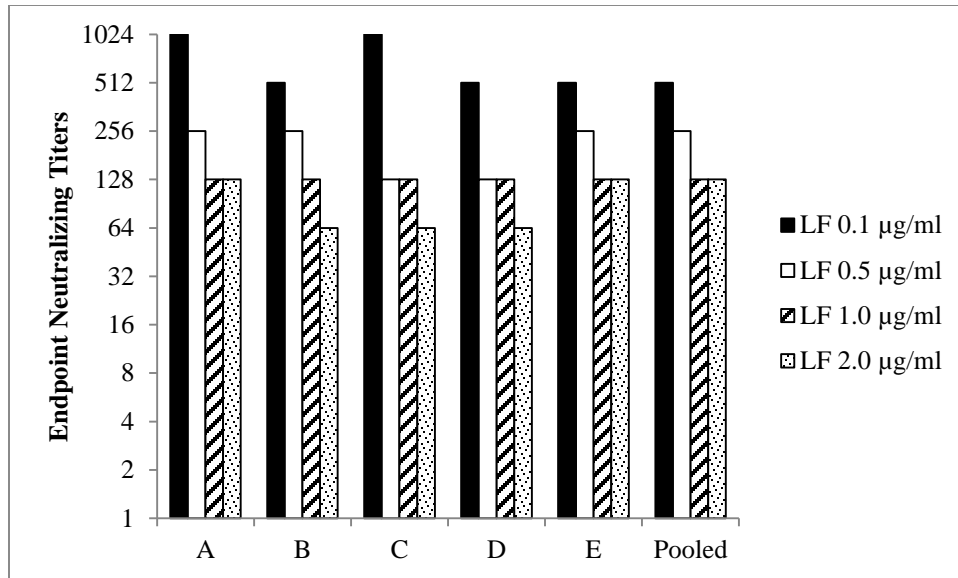
2423 **Table 4.5 Percentage cell lysis induced over varying concentrations of lethal factor (LF)**

2424 J774A.1 cells were exposed to *B. anthracis* lethal toxins containing varying concentrations of LF  
2425 or protective antigen (PA). alamarBlue was added overnight and the amount of reduced  
2426 alamarBlue was measured as an indicator of metabolic activity. Percent lysis was estimated  
2427 based on metabolism of alamarBlue and colorimetric analysis compared to a standard curve

2428

PA $\mu\text{g/ml}$	LF $\mu\text{g/ml}$	Mean OD Value	% Lysis
1.0	0.1	1.396	60.5
1.0	0.5	1.479	83.5
1.0	1.0	1.487	99.4
1.0	2.0	1.494	100
1.0	0.0	1.249	0
0.0	1.0	1.233	0

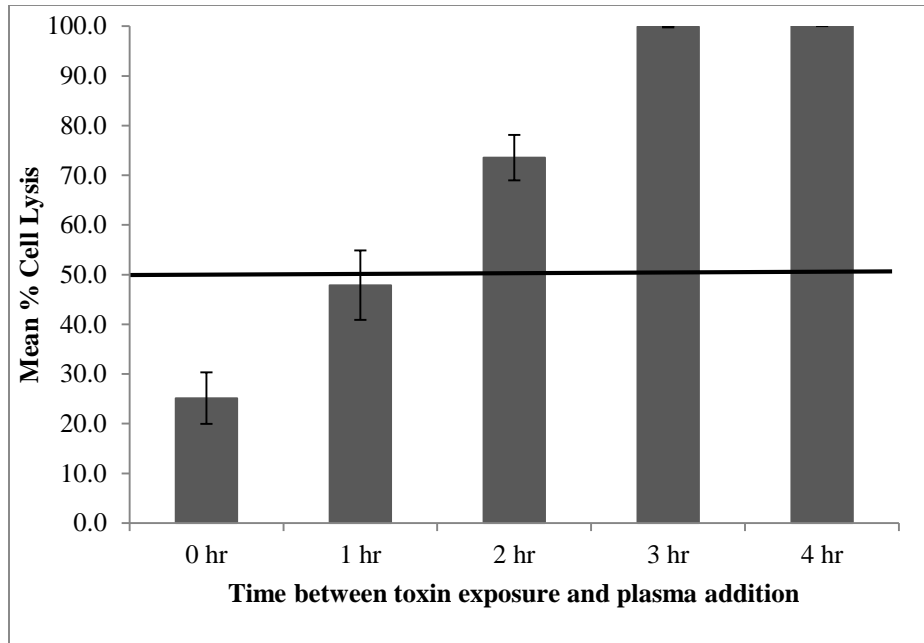
2429



2430

2431 **Figure 4.4 Antibody mediated neutralization of LF-induced lysis is influenced by the**  
 2432 **concentration of LF in the lethal toxin preparation**

2433 *J774A.1* cells were exposed to *B. anthracis* lethal toxins containing varying concentrations of LF  
 2434 that had been pre-incubated with individual (Samples A-E) and pooled hyper immune plasma  
 2435 samples. alamarBlue was added overnight and the amount of reduced alamarBlue was measured  
 2436 as an indicator of metabolic activity. The neutralization titer, defined as the highest dilution  
 2437 conveying 50% protection from the LF-mediated lysis, is plotted for each plasma sample. The  
 2438 bars indicate different concentrations of LF used to prepare the lethal toxin. Identical results  
 2439 were observed in two independent trials.



2440

2441 **Figure 4.5 Rescue of lethal toxin lysis displays a defined time limit from toxin exposure**

2442 *J774A.1* cells were exposed to *B. anthracis* lethal toxin (1.0  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  PA and 1.0  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  LF). Cells

2443 at the 0 hr time point were exposed to toxin that had been pre-incubated with hyper-immune

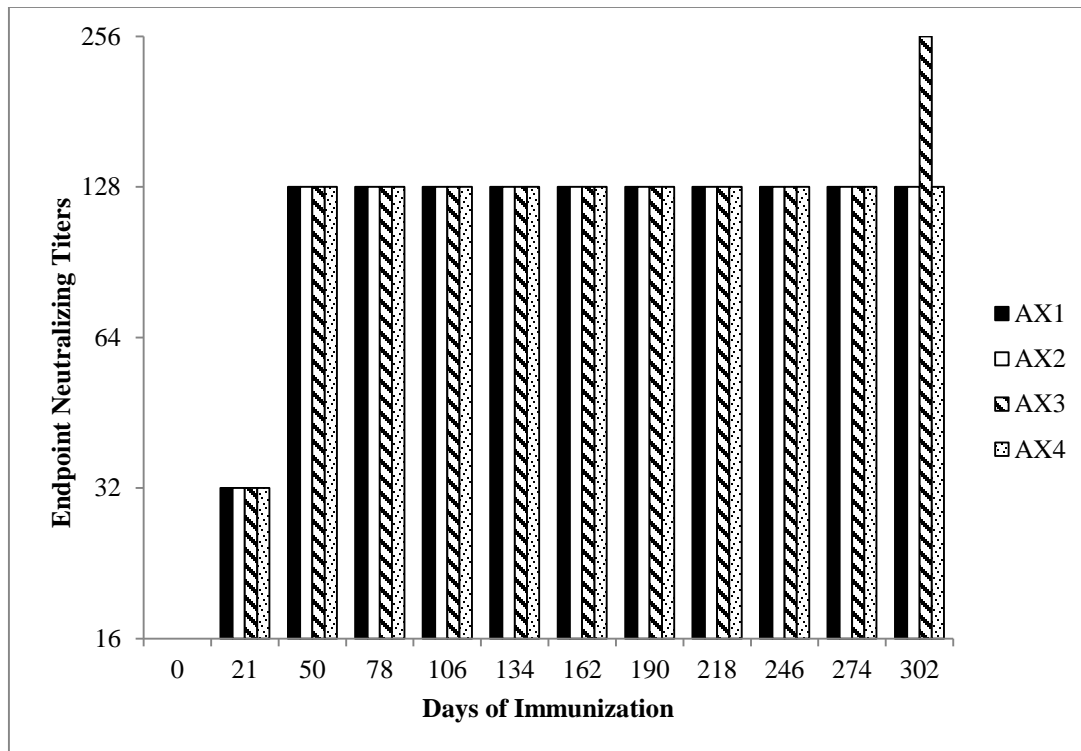
2444 plasma. At the remaining time points hyper-immune plasma was added to the cells. alamarBlue

2445 was added 4 hour after the addition of lethal toxin and left overnight. The amount of reduced

2446 alamarBlue was measured as an indicator of metabolic activity. % cell lysis was estimated from

2447 the observed OD values compared to a standard curve. The reported % lysis for each time point

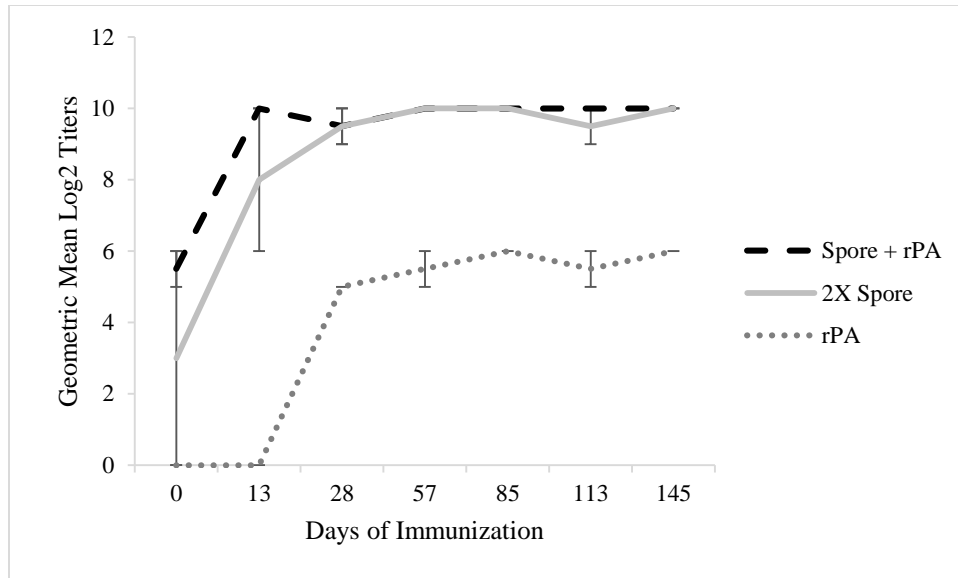
2448 represents the mean of four independent assays.



2449

2450 **Figure 4.6 Reciprocal endpoint neutralizing titers for horses immunized with 1.0 ml Sterne**  
 2451 **strain 34F2 vaccine**

2452 *J774A.1* cells were exposed to *B. anthracis* lethal toxin (1.0 µg/ml PA and 1.0 µg/ml LF) that  
 2453 had been pre-incubated with individual hyper-immune plasma samples. alamarBlue was added  
 2454 overnight and the amount of reduced alamarBlue was measured as an indicator of metabolic  
 2455 activity. The neutralization titer, defined as the highest dilution conveying 50% protection from  
 2456 the LF-mediated lysis, is plotted for each plasma sample at each time point. The bars indicate  
 2457 individual horses. Each titer represents the geometric mean for three replicates.



2458

2459 **Figure 4.7 Geometric mean neutralizing titers for horses immunized with spore vaccine**  
 2460 **and rPA, 2.0 ml spore vaccine, or rPA alone**

2461 *J774A.1* cells were exposed to *B. anthracis* lethal toxin (1.0 µg/ml PA and 1.0 µg/ml LF) and  
 2462 pre-incubated with individual plasma samples from either horses immunized with twice the spore  
 2463 dose (2X Spore, solid line), spore vaccine initially followed by rPA (Spore + rPA, dashed line),  
 2464 and rPA alone (rPA, dotted line). alamarBlue was added overnight and the amount of reduced  
 2465 alamarBlue was measured as an indicator of metabolic activity. The neutralization titer was  
 2466 defined as the highest dilution conveying 50% protection from the LF-mediated lysis. The  
 2467 geometric means represents three replicates of two horses in each treatment. A two-way repeated  
 2468 measures ANOVA demonstrated no significant differences in vaccine type ( $p = 0.663, 0.91,$  and  
 2469  $0.210$ ) or time ( $p = 0.105, 0.212,$  and  $1.0$ ).

2470 **Chapter 5:**

2471 **Passive protection against anthrax in mice with plasma derived from horses hyper-**  
2472 **immunized against *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain**

2473 **Abstract**

2474 In this final study, it was demonstrated that hyper-immune plasma and concentrated  
2475 immunoglobulins harvested from horses immunized with live attenuated Sterne strain veterinary  
2476 vaccine was successful in passively protecting A/J mice from a homologous challenge. The  
2477 treatment of mice with hyper-immune plasma at time 0 hour and 24 hour post-infection  
2478 following both an intranasal and subcutaneous challenge had no effect on survival to the end of  
2479 the study period, but did significantly increase mean time to death ( $p < 0.0001$ ). Mice treated  
2480 with affinity purified immunoglobulins at both time points post-infection in both challenge  
2481 models showed significant increase in survival rate ( $p < 0.001$ ) to the end of the study period.  
2482 Bacterial loads and colony forming units/gram of lung, liver and spleen tissue were also assessed  
2483 and were not significantly different in mice treated with hyper-immune plasma but were reduced  
2484 4 fold and completely cleared in some cases after treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins  
2485 ( $p < 0.0001$ ).

2486 **Introduction**

2487 *Bacillus anthracis*, a gram-positive, non-hemolytic, non-motile bacterium, is the  
2488 causative agent of anthrax. *B. anthracis* induces disease through the production of three toxin  
2489 polypeptides encoded on the pXO1 plasmid and a poly-D-glutamic acid capsule encoded on the

2490 pXO2 plasmid.<sup>442,443</sup> The toxin proteins are constitutively produced during log phase growth of  
2491 the bacterium and are secreted into the extracellular environment. The three components  
2492 combine in binary fashion to form two toxins, lethal toxin and edema toxin. Lethal factor (LF) is  
2493 a zinc protease that inactivates protein kinases, an important mediator of intracellular  
2494 signaling.<sup>444</sup> The end result of LF exposure is disruption of cytokine expression, impairment of  
2495 host cell function and induced apoptosis. Edema factor (EF) is an adenylate cyclase that when  
2496 bound by calmodulin and intracellular calcium generates supraphysiologic concentrations of  
2497 cAMP.<sup>154</sup> This leads to impairment of other signaling pathways related to water homeostasis in  
2498 the cell.

2499         Like all members of the *Bacillus* genus, *B. anthracis* produces spores under conditions of  
2500 resource restriction or vegetative cell stress. Spores are the dormant form of the bacterium and  
2501 are extremely resistant to desiccation and disinfection. Spores have been documented to remain  
2502 viable for several decades.<sup>109,110</sup> Exposure to spores is the initiating step in anthrax infection.  
2503 Once inhaled, ingested or introduced through the skin the spores germinate to produce vegetative  
2504 organisms. Inhalational anthrax is the deadliest form of the disease in humans due to its vague  
2505 initial clinical presentation and the rapid replicative capacity of the bacterium. A short 2-5 day  
2506 incubation period precedes the onset of flu-like symptoms early on. As the organisms overwhelm  
2507 the innate immune defenses respiratory distress ensues and progresses abruptly to respiratory  
2508 failure and septic shock. Early recognition of the disease and appropriate antibiotic therapy are  
2509 critical in successful treatment outcomes. Often despite aggressive antimicrobial therapy the  
2510 disease progresses due uncontrolled toxemia.



2511 An equine source polyclonal hyper-immune plasma was produced and targeted against *B.*  
2512 *anthracis*. The plasma was harvested from horses that were hyper-immunized against the Sterne  
2513 34F2 strain of *B. anthracis*. The *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine is currently licensed for  
2514 use in livestock species in the United States and other countries. *B. anthracis* Sterne strain is an  
2515 attenuated fully toxigenic acapsular (pXO1<sup>+</sup>, pXO2<sup>-</sup>) strain of *B. anthracis* that is capable of  
2516 inducing strong protective responses against protective antigen (PA), LF, and EF. The principal  
2517 objective of this study was to determine if equine source hyper-immune plasma specific for *B.*  
2518 *anthracis* can protect A/J mice challenged with *B. anthracis* Sterne strain in a well-controlled  
2519 passive immunization challenge assay.

## 2520 **Materials and Methods**

### 2521 *Bacterial Strain*

2522 The challenge bacterium used was obtained from the veterinary vaccine *B. anthracis*  
2523 Sterne strain 34F2 (Anthrax Spore Vaccine, Colorado Serum Company Denver, CO). One  
2524 milliliter of vaccine was plated onto BHI agar and incubated at 37<sup>0</sup>C for 24 hours. Colony  
2525 morphology was typical of an acapsular *B. anthracis* strain and a gram stain demonstrated the  
2526 cell morphology characteristic of *B. anthracis*. The Miles and Mirsa dilution drop technique was  
2527 used to verify spore concentration in the vaccine. Briefly 10-fold dilutions were prepared and 20  
2528 µl of each preparation were deposited in triplicate onto BHI agar plates and incubated at 37<sup>0</sup>C for  
2529 24 hours. Colonies were only counted for those dilutions where 3-50 full-size discrete colonies  
2530 could be distinguished. CFU/ml was estimated with the following formula:

2531  $CFU/ml = \text{Mean number of colonies for a dilution} \times 50 \times \text{dilution factor}$

2532 A concentration of  $5 \times 10^6$  spores/ml was verified to be in agreement with published data from  
2533 the manufacturer.

2534 For preparation of the challenge inocula, single colonies of Sterne strain were taken from  
2535 BHI agar plates and inoculated in BHI broth for overnight culture at  $37^{\circ}C$ . Each culture was  
2536 spread onto modified germination (G) medium agar plates [0.2% yeast extract, 0.2%  $(NH_4)_2SO_4$ ,  
2537 1.5% Bacto agar, 0.0025%  $CaCl_2$  dihydrate, 0.05%  $K_2HPO_4$ , 0.02%  $MgSO_4$  heptahydrate,  
2538 0.005%  $MnSO_4$  quatrahydrate, 0.0005%  $ZnSO_4$  dihydrate, 0.0005%  $CuSO_4$  pentahydrate,  
2539 0.00005%  $FeSO_4$  heptahydrate]. The plates were incubated at  $30^{\circ}C$  for 8 to 10 days in the dark.  
2540 Colonies scraped from the surface of the agar were resuspended in distilled water and were heat  
2541 treated at  $65^{\circ}C$  for 1 h to kill any viable vegetative cells. Purification of spores was done with  
2542 58% (vol/vol) Renografin (Renocal-76 diluted in  $dH_2O$ ; Bracco Diagnostics, Princeton, NJ).  
2543 Spores were layered onto the 58% Renografin and centrifuged at  $6,000 \times g$  for 30 min in a  
2544 swinging bucket rotor. The sedimented spores were washed twice with  $dH_2O$ . After the final  
2545 sedimentation, the spores were re-suspended in distilled water to yield a final concentration of  
2546  $10^9$  to  $10^{10}$  spores/ml. The intranasal challenge inoculum dilutions were made to achieve a  
2547 concentration of  $1.2 \times 10^5$  spores in 30  $\mu l$  of sterile PBS. Based on preliminary studies, this  
2548 infectious dose resulted in a consistent delivery of 4  $LD_{50}$  aspirated into the lungs. For the  
2549 subcutaneous challenge, dilutions were prepared to achieve a concentration of approximately  $1 \times$   
2550  $10^3$  spores in 100  $\mu l$  of sterile PBS. Stock preparations of both challenge inoculums were verified  
2551 for spore concentration immediately before and after challenge procedures were performed.

2552 *Animals*

2553 All procedures described within this study involving the use of animals were approved by  
2554 Auburn University Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee (protocol #2012-2105). Female  
2555 A/J strain mice were obtained from Jackson Laboratory (Bar Harbor, ME) and were from 6-12  
2556 weeks age during these experiments. Mice were housed in ventilation controlled hepa-filtered  
2557 biosafety cages with up to 5 animals per cage. All mice were provided *ad libitum* food and water  
2558 for the duration of the study. Prior to the initiation of the study all mice were randomly allocated  
2559 to treatment groups (Table

2560 *Anti-Bacillus anthracis Hyper-Immune Plasma*

2561 Hyper-immune plasma was obtained from horses immunized with *B. anthracis* Sterne  
2562 strain 34F2 spore vaccine (Anthrax Spore Vaccine, Colorado Serum Company, Denver, CO) at  
2563 monthly intervals for approximately one year. Anti-PA antibody titers and *B. anthracis* toxin  
2564 neutralization titers were monitored throughout the immunization procedures. Plasmapheresis  
2565 was performed periodically as described previously. Upon each pheresis event, 20 L of plasma  
2566 was collected from each horse then aliquoted in 1 liter volumes and sealed aseptically and stored  
2567 at at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready for use. Hyper-immune plasma that was used for the treatment of mice in  
2568 the challenge studies was prepared immediately prior to its administration by pooling four 20 ml  
2569 aliquots from each of the individual pheresis events that were determined to have the highest  
2570 anti-PA antibody activity and highest toxin neutralizing activity. Equine plasma that was used  
2571 for negative controls was obtained from two horses determined to have had no previous exposure  
2572 to *B. anthracis* or the spore vaccine and no anti-PA antibody activity or toxin neutralizing

2573 capacity as determined by an anti-PA ELISA and lethal toxin neutralization assay. Samples were  
2574 collected and processed as described for hyper-immune plasma treatments. Individual plasma  
2575 treatment doses contained 0.8 ml of either pooled hyper-immune plasma or naïve plasma. This  
2576 volume was chosen as it was considered the maximum volume that could be safely administered  
2577 intraperitoneal to mice.

#### 2578 *Concentrated Immunoglobulin G*

2579         The same hyper-immune plasma samples that were used for the treatment of mice in the  
2580 challenge studies were subjected to polyclonal protein A columns for affinity purification (Pierce  
2581 Protein A Columns, Pierce-Thermo Scientific, Rockford, IL). Briefly, plasma was diluted 1:1  
2582 with Protein A binding buffer and passed through a column of agarose resin beads coupled with  
2583 Protein A. The solution was allowed to flow through the resin beads by gravity flow and the  
2584 flow-through was collected from the base of the column. Following a wash with binding buffer  
2585 to remove unbound protein, the bound immunoglobulins were eluted with elution buffer. The  
2586 elution fractions were adjusted to physiologic pH via the addition of a neutralization buffer.  
2587 Elution and protein concentration was monitored through the use of a protein assay (Thermo  
2588 Scientific BCA protein assay kit, Thermo Scientific, Rockford, IL). Fractions with the highest  
2589 protein content were pooled and stored at -80<sup>0</sup> C until ready to use. For the preparation of  
2590 treatment doses, immunoglobulin fractions were thawed and pooled to correspond with the  
2591 hyper-immune samples used to treat mice in the previous challenges studies.

2592

2593

2594 *Lethal Dose<sub>50</sub> Determination*

2595           Seven groups of mice (n = 5) were used for each intranasal (IN) and subcutaneous (SC)  
2596 LD<sub>50</sub> challenges. For IN challenges, mice were first anesthetized with an intraperitoneal (IP)  
2597 administration of xylazine (10 mg/kg) and ketamine (100 µg/kg). Once sedated mice received  
2598 30 µl PBS containing log fold dilutions of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spores from 1 x 10<sup>6</sup> to 10  
2599 spores by IN administration. A control group received only 30 µl of sterile PBS administered IN.  
2600 The droplets were deposited on the external nares and the mice held in dorsal recumbency until  
2601 all the liquid had been aspirated. Each mouse was then laid in dorsal recumbency until fully  
2602 recovered from anesthesia. Subcutaneous challenges were carried out with the mice fully awake.  
2603 Each mouse was administered 100 µl PBS containing log fold dilutions of *B. anthracis* Sterne  
2604 strain spores from 1 x 10<sup>6</sup> to 10 spores. Inoculations were delivered via 5/8<sup>th</sup> inch 25 gauge  
2605 needle injected SC over the shoulders. A control group received only 100 µl of sterile PBS SC.  
2606 Each of these LD<sub>50</sub> studies was conducted three times independently. Preparations of all dilutions  
2607 were verified for spore concentration immediately before and after challenge procedures were  
2608 performed.

2609 *Inoculum Preparation*

2610           For the IN challenge dilutions were made to achieve a concentration of approximately 1.5  
2611 x 10<sup>4</sup> spores in 30 µl of sterile PBS. For the subcutaneous inoculum dilutions were prepared to  
2612 achieve a concentration of approximately 2 x 10<sup>3</sup> spores in 100 µl of sterile PBS. Stock

2613 preparations of both challenge inocula were verified for spore concentration immediately before  
2614 and after challenge procedures. Intranasal challenge preparations ranged in spore concentration  
2615 from  $1.31 \times 10^4$  -  $1.85 \times 10^4$ , while spore concentration of the SC inoculum ranged from  $1.7 \times 10^3$   
2616 -  $3.0 \times 10^3$ .

2617

#### 2618 *Intranasal and Subcutaneous Challenge of Mice*

2619 Intranasal challenges were carried out by first anesthetizing each mouse and depositing  
2620 30  $\mu$ l PBS containing approximately 4 LD<sub>50</sub> spores deposited on the external nares as described.  
2621 Sham IN challenged mice were anesthetized and handled in an identical manner, however 30  $\mu$ l  
2622 of sterile PBS was deposited on the external nares. For SC infection, mice were injected with 100  
2623  $\mu$ l PBS containing 4 LD<sub>50</sub> under the skin of the shoulders as described. Sham SC challenged  
2624 mice were handled in an identical manner but 100  $\mu$ l of sterile PBS was administered SC.

#### 2625 *Passive Immunization of Mice*

2626 The mice were divided into 7 treatment groups for each route of challenge as described in  
2627 Table 5.1 and Table 5.2. Briefly each mouse was administered either; 1) plasma collected from  
2628 horses naïve to *B. anthracis*, 2) hyper-immune plasma from horses immunized against Sterne  
2629 strain spore vaccine, or 3) concentrated immunoglobulins from horses immunized against Sterne  
2630 strain spore vaccine. For each treatment 0.8 ml volume was administered into the right rear  
2631 quadrant of the peritoneal cavity by 5/8<sup>th</sup> inch, 25 gauge needle while the mouse was restrained  
2632 in dorsal recumbency. Treatments were administered at the time of experimental challenge or 24

2633 hours post-infection. Following each challenge, the mice were monitored twice daily for changes  
2634 in clinical behavior. An ethogram, Table 5.3, was used to assign a clinical score for four criteria  
2635 following each observation. Any mouse with a combined clinical score  $\leq 3$  at an observation  
2636 would be humanely euthanized. Euthanasia was performed by carbon dioxide inhalation in a  
2637 euthanasia chamber followed by cervical dislocation according to the “AVMA guidelines for the  
2638 euthanasia of animals: 2013 edition”.

#### 2639 *Determination of Tissue CFUs*

2640 The lung, liver, and spleen were collected immediately following euthanasia or natural  
2641 death of each mouse. The tissues were weighed and manually homogenized. Following  
2642 homogenization, an equal weight by volume of sterile PBS was added to each tissue homogenate  
2643 and 1ml of the homogenate was serially diluted 1:10 in sterile PBS. Twenty  $\mu$ l of each dilution  
2644 was plated onto BHI agar plates in triplicates and incubated at 37<sup>0</sup> C for 24 hours. Colony  
2645 forming units were determined using the Miles and Misra method and calculations made to  
2646 determine the CFUs/gram of tissue.

#### 2647 *Statistical Analysis*

2648 Survival rates and LD<sub>50</sub> was calculated similar to methods described by Welkos.<sup>251</sup> Probit  
2649 analysis was used to calculate LD<sub>50</sub> values. Survival rates were compared by Fischer exact tests.  
2650 Kaplan-Meier survival analysis was used to construct survival curves. Mean time of death was  
2651 compared using a one way ANOVA with Tukey, LSD, and Bonferroni post-hoc analysis.

2652 Kruskal-Wallis tests were used to compare the colony forming units/gram of tissue. All analyses  
2653 were conducted using IBM SPSS Statistics version 21.

## 2654 **Results**

### 2655 *Estimation of LD<sub>50</sub> for Sterne strain 34F2 in A/J mice*

2656 To determine the number of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spores needed to induce 100%  
2657 lethality in A/J mice following both IN and SC challenge models, the LD<sub>50</sub> dose for each route  
2658 was established, Tables 5.4 and 5.5, respectively. The combined log<sub>10</sub> of the LD<sub>50</sub> for the IN  
2659 challenge was 3.572 (lower and upper 95% confidence interval: 3.035 and 4.116) or 3.7 x 10<sup>3</sup>  
2660 spores (lower and upper 95% confidence interval: 1084 and 13,072). The combined log<sub>10</sub> of the  
2661 LD<sub>50</sub> for the SC challenge was 2.738 (lower and upper 95% confidence interval: 2.180 and  
2662 3.223) or 5.47 x 10<sup>2</sup> spores (lower and upper 95% confidence interval: 151 and 1672). Based on  
2663 these data, it was decided to administer 4 X the LD<sub>50</sub> dose for subsequent experimental  
2664 challenges. Therefore, mice exposed to IN challenge received approximately 1.5 x 10<sup>4</sup> spores and  
2665 mice exposed to SC challenge received approximately 2 x 10<sup>3</sup> spores.

### 2666 *Survival of A/J mice following Sterne strain challenge*

2667 Table 5.6 and Figure 5.1 show The cumulative survival and Kaplan-Meier survival curve  
2668 of A/J mice given an IN challenge with 1.5 x 10<sup>4</sup> spores and administered 0.8 ml of either *naïve*  
2669 plasma or hyper-immune plasma IP at the same time as challenge or 24 hours post-challenge is  
2670 demonstrated in Table 5.6 and Figure 5.1. There were no significant differences in the number of  
2671 mice surviving to the end of the 7 day study period in either treatment groups compared to



2672 controls ( $p = 1.000$ ). However, treatment with hyper-immune plasma at both time points did  
2673 significantly prolong mean time to death ( $p < 0.001$ , both treatment groups compared to  
2674 challenge control), Table 5.7, perhaps indicating an effect of treatment but an insufficient titer of  
2675 protective antibodies to result in complete survival. Tables 5.8, 5.9 and Figure 5.2 reveal similar  
2676 results for the SC challenge in that hyper-immune plasma treatments did not result in  
2677 significantly larger numbers of mice surviving to the end of the study period ( $p = 1.000$ ), but that  
2678 hyper-immune plasma treatments did lead to significantly longer mean time to death ( $p = 0.003$ ),  
2679 in this case for the time 0 hour treatment group only.

2680           When mice were administered 0.8 ml of concentrated anti- *B. anthracis* immunoglobulins  
2681 IP following IN challenge with  $1.5 \times 10^4$  Sterne strain spores, 86% (13/15) survived to the end of  
2682 trial when treated at the time of challenge and 80% (12/15) survived to the end of the trial when  
2683 treated at 24 hours post-challenge, Table 5.6 and Figure 5.3. Treatment with hyper-immune  
2684 plasma at both time points resulted in significantly more mice surviving to the end of the study  
2685 period ( $p < 0.001$ , both treatment groups) and a significantly prolonged survival time ( $p < 0.001$ ,  
2686 both treatment groups) when compared to mice treated with naïve plasma. Similar results were  
2687 shown for SC challenged mice when treated with concentrated equine immunoglobulins, Table  
2688 5.7 and Figure 5.4. Treatment of mice at the time of challenge resulted in 100% (15/15) survival,  
2689 while treatment at 24 hours post-challenge resulted in 86% (13/15) survival. These survival rates  
2690 were significantly higher ( $p < 0.001$ , both treatment groups) than challenge control mice. Both  
2691 treatments resulted in significantly longer ( $p < 0.001$ ) mean time to death compared to control  
2692 mice. The lack of morbidity in the treatment control groups for all trials conducted indicates that

2693 the administration of *naïve* plasma, hyper-immune plasma and concentrated immunoglobulins  
2694 was well tolerated by the mice in this study.

2695 *Reduction in tissue CFU*

2696 *Bacillus anthracis* was successfully cultured from the lung, liver and spleen in challenged  
2697 mice that succumb or were euthanized following IN and SC challenge. The tissues of control  
2698 mice that received sterile PBS either IN or SC yielded no bacterial growth in any of the  
2699 conducted trials. Although *B. anthracis* could be successfully isolated from the liver and spleen  
2700 of mice following IN challenge, only lung tissue homogenates resulted in sufficiently high  
2701 enough CFUs to accurately estimate bacterial loads. Culture of both lung and liver homogenates  
2702 yielded sufficient CFUs for estimation in the SC challenge (Table 5.10). Neither challenge route  
2703 resulted in high enough bacterial loads in the spleen to accurately determine CFU/gram of tissue.

2704 While administration of hyper-immune plasma at the time of IN challenge did not  
2705 provide sufficient protection to result in survival of infected mice, hyper-immune plasma  
2706 treatment did result in significantly fewer CFU/gram of lung tissue compared to mice receiving  
2707 *naïve* plasma, Figure 5.5. On the other hand, administration of native immune plasma at 24 hours  
2708 post-challenge did not result in significant differences in CFU/gram of lung tissue. When mice  
2709 were administered concentrated immunoglobulins at the time of challenge and at 24 hours post-  
2710 challenge bacterial counts were significantly lower than untreated control mice. Interestingly,  
2711 treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins resulted in only an approximately 4 fold reduction  
2712 in CFU/gram suggesting that perhaps these mice would have shown morbidity or mortality at a  
2713 later time point as the concentration of passively acquired immunoglobulins waned.

2714 Following SC challenge, administration of hyper-immune plasma had no effect on  
2715 CFUs/gram of lung or liver tissue regardless of treatment time, Figures 5.6 and 5.7, Table 5.10.  
2716 With the exception of the two mice that succumbed to infection, treatment with concentrated  
2717 immunoglobulins following SC challenge at both time points yielded no bacterial growth from  
2718 the lung and liver tissue sampled indicating effective clearance of the organism.

2719

2720

## 2721 Discussion

2722 The use of A/J mice has proven a valuable challenge model for active and passive  
2723 immunization studies with *B. anthracis*.<sup>251,445</sup> The A/J strain of mice is homozygous for  
2724 *Naip5<sup>Lgn1-s</sup>* which imparts reduced macrophage bactericidal activity and increased susceptibility  
2725 to bacterial infection.<sup>446</sup> Welkos *et al.* defined this strain's susceptibility to *B. anthracis* Sterne  
2726 strain by multiple routes of infection.<sup>251</sup> The benefit of this challenge model is chiefly the  
2727 reduced risk in handling an acapsular strain of the organism compared to fully virulent *B.*  
2728 *anthracis* strains. This permits conducting such experiments in BSL 2 laboratory conditions.

2729 The LD<sub>50</sub> infectious dose for an IN and SC challenge identified in this work were  
2730 consistent with previously published values.<sup>251</sup> Other investigators using this model have used  
2731 dramatically higher infectious spore doses (up to 100 LD<sub>50</sub>), however beyond the inference about  
2732 the strength of protection provided by the investigated modalities there is little justification for  
2733 such a heavy challenge.<sup>415</sup> Here the authors chose an infectious dose of 4 LD<sub>50</sub> (~15,000 spores

2734 IN and ~ 2,000 spores SC) that would be fully lethal. This infectious dose would therefore not  
2735 result in an overwhelming infection, particularly in the case of the intranasal challenge, and  
2736 produce spurious results as to the protective benefits of these treatments. Though making  
2737 comparative correlations between this animal model and natural infections in humans may not be  
2738 accurate, the estimated median lethal dose for inhalation anthrax in humans is likely within the  
2739 range of 2,500-55,000 spores and 10 spores or less for cutaneous anthrax.<sup>16</sup>

2740           The lack of survival in both routes of infection (IN and SC) in mice treated with hyper-  
2741 immune plasma suggests that the titer of transferred antibodies was too low to sufficiently  
2742 neutralize all the organisms. One hypothesis for the poor protection of these mice is that the  
2743 passive titers were rapidly consumed by the infection and did not effectively neutralize all of the  
2744 bacteria. This permitted continued replication and the progression of the disease. This hypothesis  
2745 is supported by the evidence that treatment with hyper-immune plasma resulted in a significantly  
2746 longer mean time to death and the overwhelming survival of mice treated with the concentrated  
2747 immunoglobulins. Presumably the latter resulted from a transfer of a much higher titer of  
2748 protective antibodies. Another potential mechanism for the poor protection of the hyper-immune  
2749 plasma is the increased clearance of the foreign immunoglobulins and other plasma proteins in  
2750 the hyper-immune plasma by the mouse's own immune system. In this study, the titers of  
2751 specific antibodies present in mouse serum was not determined nor the rate of decay of  
2752 transferred antibody titers following administration.

2753           Testing both these hypotheses begins with determining the kinetics of passive titers over  
2754 time in the anti-PA ELISA and toxin neutralization assays. It's difficult to anticipate if the

2755 increased clearance of foreign protein would induce a measurable clinical effect but all  
2756 treatments were very well tolerated in principal and control groups. The administration of plasma  
2757 into the peritoneal cavity in mice is a conventionally accepted route of delivering large volumes,  
2758 but the peritoneum is known in mice and other species to be inherently sensitive to foreign  
2759 antigen and inflammatory responses. Full necropsies were performed in all mice at the time of  
2760 death or euthanasia and no pathology consistent with peritonitis was noted in any of these  
2761 examinations. Perhaps the concentrated immunoglobulin treatment did not induce an antigenic  
2762 response and increased clearance or at least transferred a titer high enough to effectively  
2763 neutralize the bacteria in spite of increased clearance.

2764         Ideally, a correlation between the *in vivo* passive protection and TNA and ELISA titers  
2765 would be made to define the dose of antibodies necessary to provide protection. The failure of  
2766 the hyper-immune plasma to provide full protection prevented us from developing fully  
2767 characterized dilutions of plasma to be used for those experiments. Despite not surviving to the  
2768 end of the study period, treatment with hyper-immune plasma did extend the mean time to death  
2769 in both experimental challenge routes and time points with the exception of treatment 24 hour  
2770 after SC challenge. This suggests that multiple treatments of hyper-immune plasma may be  
2771 necessary to establish protection. Once the half-life of passive antibodies is determined then  
2772 studies can be conducted to establish a minimum effective dose of concentrated  
2773 immunoglobulins and/or dosing frequency necessary for successive treatments of plasma. In  
2774 addition, a combination therapeutic strategy of antimicrobial and passive antibody therapy may  
2775 provide an additive effect resulting in greater survivability in inhalation *B. anthracis* infection.

2776           It would also be advantageous to define the immunodominant epitopes and the primary  
2777 factors of protective efficacy in these treatments. Recent studies utilizing combinations of  
2778 monoclonal antibody therapies or cocktails against LF and/or PA have revealed unexpected  
2779 mechanisms of protection when compared to single monoclonal therapy.<sup>435</sup> This raises questions  
2780 about the benefit of monoclonal therapy compared to polyclonal therapy and introduces potential  
2781 studies designed to elucidate the synergistic effect of multiple protective antibodies.

2782           All mice that died as a result of *B. anthracis* in this study had similar CFUs/gram of  
2783 tissue of *B. anthracis* regardless of treatment. This may indicate that though the infection may  
2784 have been restrained by the treatment with hyper-immune plasma and concentrated  
2785 immunoglobulins the bacterium ultimately gained an advantage and reached a uniform number  
2786 of bacteria prior to death. Interestingly, treatment with concentrated immunoglobulins only  
2787 reduced the bacterial load in the lungs of IN challenged mice by 4 fold. Oscherwitz *et al.*  
2788 demonstrated that immunization of animals with spore antigens induced a protective antibody  
2789 response that effectively limited germination.<sup>447</sup> The passive treatments used here were derived  
2790 from horses receiving multiple doses of the *B. anthracis* Sterne strain spore vaccine which may  
2791 have effectively stimulated similar antibodies. The higher titers provided by the concentrated  
2792 immunoglobulins may have prevented some of the spores from germinating during the 7 day  
2793 study period. Alternatively, it has been documented that not all *B. anthracis* spores germinate  
2794 immediately upon inhalation into the lungs. Cases of inhalational anthrax were reported up to 59  
2795 days following the exposure event that occurred in Sverdlosk in the former Soviet Union and up  
2796 to 21 days following the intentional release of *B. anthracis* in the U. S. mail in 2001.<sup>14,225</sup> If the

2797 observation period for this study had been extended to 14 days as other investigators have done  
2798 there may have been an observed increase in the morbidity and mortality in the IN challenged  
2799 mice.

2800           The results of this study demonstrate the protective capacity of hyperimmune plasma and  
2801 concentrated immunoglobulins against *B. anthracis* harvested from horses vaccinated with the  
2802 Sterne strain spore vaccine. We have previously shown *in vitro* activity of this plasma in a  
2803 quantitative anti-PA ELISA and quantitative protective titers in toxin neutralization assays.  
2804 Successful protection of mice infected with *B. anthracis* described here continues the path in the  
2805 development of polyclonal hyper-immune plasma to be used as a passive immunotherapeutic  
2806 agent in humans infected with anthrax. *B. anthracis* remains an important agent of biological  
2807 warfare and terrorism and much effort and research support has been expended in identifying  
2808 successful strategies for protecting the public. Vaccination of first responders and military  
2809 personnel is a key component in the US response to an anthrax attack, but a vaccine that induces  
2810 rapid and protective immunity suitable for mass immunizations has not been developed.  
2811 Monoclonal antibodies are a promising new therapeutic avenue for the prevention and treatment  
2812 of anthrax. Raxibacumab, now ABthrax<sup>TM</sup> is a PA monoclonal produced by Human Genome  
2813 Sciences. In mid-December 2012 the FDA approved ABthrax<sup>TM</sup> for use in patients with  
2814 inhalational anthrax. Polyclonal antisera harvested from human volunteers vaccinated with the  
2815 killed anthrax vaccine has also become commercially available from Cangene Corporation and  
2816 Emergent Biosolutions under the name Anthrax Immune Globulin (AIG). Recently this product  
2817 received conditional licensure from the FDA for treatment of inhalational anthrax. Passive

2818 immunization using polyclonal or a high-affinity monoclonal antibody may offer adjunctive  
2819 value to antibiotic therapy. Monoclonal therapy has limitations due to its single epitope affinity,  
2820 thus making it possible to mutate strains of *B. anthracis* which resist their action. Additionally,  
2821 manufacturing monoclonal antibodies is a resource dependent endeavor. Polyclonal therapy  
2822 represents the breadth of the humeral immune response and improves immune clearance of  
2823 pathogens through more efficient activation effector mechanisms such as opsinization,  
2824 phagocytosis, and complement mediated bacterial cell lysis. AIG possess several disadvantages  
2825 however, such as a limited number of individuals who are immunized and willing to donate  
2826 plasma, inconsistent antibody titers within individuals require post-harvest manipulations to  
2827 stabilize immunoglobulin concentration and the risk of inadvertent transmission of blood borne  
2828 infections. Equine source polyclonal plasma resolves these issues by providing a reliable source  
2829 of large volumes of high affinity plasma that can be produced at an estimated 1/8<sup>th</sup> the cost of  
2830 human polyclonal plasma. Future directions in developing equine hyper-immune plasma include  
2831 evaluation of the protection in other animal models and against fully virulent strains, definition  
2832 of the kinetics of the passively transferred antibodies, and refinement of the appropriate hyper-  
2833 immune plasma or concentrated immunoglobulin doses alone and in combination with  
2834 antimicrobial therapy. Additional steps in processing, such as affinity purification and trypsin  
2835 digestion that are needed to make this product safe for use in humans must be evaluated to  
2836 determine their effect of protective efficacy. The use of equine antisera for emergent prevention  
2837 and treatment of infectious diseases has been proven to be an effective and safe strategy.  
2838 Therefore, immunoprophylaxis with equine hyper-immune plasma might be a viable strategy for  
2839 anthrax counter measures.



2840

2841 **Table 5.1 Allocation of mice into treatment groups for IN challenge.**

2842 Mice were randomly allocated into one of 6 treatment groups. Each group except the Tx control  
 2843 group received  $1.5 \times 10^4$  spores suspended in 30  $\mu$ l of PBS. The 30  $\mu$ l was deposited on the  
 2844 external nares while the mouse held in dorsal recumbancy until the droplet was inhaled. The Tx  
 2845 control received sterile PBS only. While anesthetized each mouse received an intraperitoneal  
 2846 injection of 0.8 ml the appropriate treatment.

2847 Phase I Hyper-immune Plasma Intranasal Challenge Study

Group Designation	Challenge	Treatment	Volume administered	Number of Mice
Tx Control	Sterile PBS	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20
IN Challenge control	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	<i>Naïve</i> plasma	0.8 ml	20
IN Plasma-0 hours	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20
IN Plasma-24 hours	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20

2848 Phase II Concentrated Immunoglobulins Intranasal Challenge Study

Group Designation	Challenge	Treatment	Volume administered	Number of Mice
Tx Control	Sterile PBS	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	15
IN Challenge control	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	<i>Naïve</i> plasma	0.8 ml	15
IN Immunoglobulins-0 hours	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	Concentrated IgG	0.8 ml	15
IN-Immunoglobulins-24 hours	$1.5 \times 10^4$ spores	Concentrated IgG	0.8 ml	15

2849

2850 **Table 6 Allocation of mice into treatment groups for SC challenge**

2851 Mice were randomly allocated into one of 6 treatment groups. Each group except the Tx control  
 2852 group received  $2.3 \times 10^3$  spores suspended in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS. The challenge was injected  
 2853 subcutaneously between the shoulders. The Tx control received sterile PBS only. In addition,  
 2854 each mouse received an intraperitoneal injection of 0.8 ml the appropriate treatment.

2855 Phase I Hyper-immune Plasma Subcutaneous Challenge Study

Group Designation	Challenge	Treatment	Volume administered	Number of Mice
Tx Control	Sterile PBS	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20
SC Challenge control	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	<i>Naïve</i> plasma	0.8 ml	20
SC Plasma-0 hours	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20
SC Plasma-24 hours	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	20

2856 Phase II Concentrated Immunoglobulins Intranasal Challenge Study

Group Designation	Challenge	Treatment	Volume administered	Number of Mice
Tx Control	Sterile PBS	Hyper-immune plasma	0.8 ml	15
SC Challenge control	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	<i>Naïve</i> plasma	0.8 ml	15
SC Immunoglobulins-0 hours	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	Concentrated IgG	0.8 ml	15
SC Immunoglobulins-24 hours	$2.3 \times 10^3$ spores	Concentrated IgG	0.8 ml	15

2857

2858 **Table 5.3 Clinical Behavior Ethogram**

2859 Each mouse was daily observed according to the following parameters. Each subcategory score  
 2860 was tallied for a total clinical score that was used to determine the overall health of the animal  
 2861 and when euthanasia was mandated (total clinical score  $\leq 3$ ).

Clinical Observation Ethogram

Parameter	Description	Score
Appearance (Also note if abdominal distention is present)	Normal: bright eyes; shiny, well-groomed hair coat	2
	Abnormal: Unkempt hair coat, dull fur	1
	Abnormal: Hunching, piloerection	0
Natural Behavior	Normal: Active; interactive in Environment	3
	Slight decrease in activity; less Interactive	2
	Abnormal: Pronounced decrease in activity; isolated	1
	Abnormal: Possible self-mutilation; hyperactive or immobile	0
Provoked Behavior	Normal: Quickly moves away	3
	Slow to move away or exaggerated response	2
	Abnormal: Moves away after a short period of time	1
	Abnormal: Does not move or reacts with excessively exaggerated response	0
Body Condition Score	Emaciated	1
	Thin	2
	Normal	3
	Overweight	4
	Obese	5
Total Score		1-13

2862

2863 **Table 5.4 Probit analysis for IN LD<sub>50</sub> determination**

2864 Mice were exposed to escalating concentrations of spores suspended in 30 µl sterile PBS. For the  
 2865 challenge each mouse was anesthetized and held in dorsal recumbancy while the 30 µl droplet  
 2866 was placed on the external nares. Once the droplet had been inhaled the mouse was returned to  
 2867 its cage for recovery. The number of dead mice were tallied and probit analysis used to establish  
 2868 the LD<sub>50</sub>.

Total Dead Mice	Total Mice Exposed	Spore Count
0	15	0
0	15	10
4	15	10 <sup>2</sup>
8	15	10 <sup>3</sup>
11	15	10 <sup>4</sup>
13	15	10 <sup>5</sup>
15	15	10 <sup>6</sup>

**Probit Analysis**

Probability	Estimate	95% Confidence Limits of Spore Count		95% Confidence Limits of log (Spore Count)		
		Lower Bound	Upper Bound	Estimate	Lower Bound	Upper Bound
.500	3731.075	1084.181	13072.463	3.572	3.035	4.116

2869

2870 **Table 5.5 Probit analysis for SC LD<sub>50</sub> determination**

2871 Mice were exposed to escalating concentrations of spores suspended in 100 µl sterile PBS. For  
 2872 the challenge each mouse was injected subcutaneously between the shoulders. The number of  
 2873 dead mice were tallied and probit analysis used to establish the LD<sub>50</sub>.

Total Dead Mice	Total Mice Exposed	Spore Count
0	15	0
1	15	10
6	15	10 <sup>2</sup>
9	15	10 <sup>3</sup>
11	15	10 <sup>4</sup>
14	15	10 <sup>5</sup>
15	15	10 <sup>6</sup>

**Probit Analysis**

Probability	95% Confidence Limits of Spore Count			95% Confidence Limits of log (Spore Count)		
	Estimate	Lower Bound	Upper Bound	Estimate	Lower Bound	Upper Bound
.500	547.467	151.317	1672.243	2.738	2.180	3.223

2874

2875 **Table 5.6 Cumulative survival following IN challenge**

2876 Mice were IN challenged with  $1.5 \times 10^4$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2877 hyper-immune plasma, concentrated immunoglobulins, or *naïve* equine plasma at 0 hours or 24  
 2878 hours post-infection.

	0 hours	24 hours	p value
Hyper-Immune Plasma	0/20 <sup>a</sup>	0/20	p = 1.000 <sup>b</sup>
Concentrated Immunoglobulins	14/15	12/15	p < 0.001 <sup>b,c</sup>
<i>Naïve</i> Equine Plasma	–	–	1/35
Treatment Control	–	–	35/35

2879

2880 a. Survivors/total

2881 b. One-sided Fischer exact test

2882 c. p < 0.001 for both 0 hr and 24 hr treatment groups

2883 **Table 5.7 Mean time to death (TTD) following IN challenge**

2884 Mice were IN challenged with  $1.5 \times 10^4$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2885 hyper-immune plasma, concentrated immunoglobulins, or *naïve* equine plasma at 0 hours or 24  
 2886 hours post-infection.

	0 hours	24 hours	p value
Hyper-Immune plasma	4.125 days	3.950 days	$p < 0.001^{a,b}$
Concentrated Immunoglobulins	6.467 days	6.833 days	$p < 0.001^{a,b}$
<i>Naïve</i> Equine Plasma	–	–	3.428 days
Treatment Control	–	–	7 days

2887 a. Kruskal-Wallis test comparison of means

2888 b.  $p < 0.001$  for both 0 hr and 24 hr treatment groups



2889 **Table 5.8 Cumulative survival following SC challenge**

2890 Mice were SC challenged with  $2.3 \times 10^3$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2891 hyper-immune plasma, concentrated immunoglobulins, or *naïve* equine plasma at 0 hours or 24  
 2892 hours post-infection.

	0 hours	24 hours	p value
Hyper-Immune Plasma	0/20 <sup>a</sup>	0/20	p = 1.000 <sup>b</sup>
Concentrated Immunoglobulins	15/15	12/15	p < 0.001 <sup>b,c</sup>
<i>Naïve</i> Equine Plasma	–	–	0/35
Treatment Control	–	–	35/35

2893 a. Survivors/total

2894 b. One-sided Fischer exact test

2895 c. p < 0.001 for both 0 hr and 24 hr treatment groups

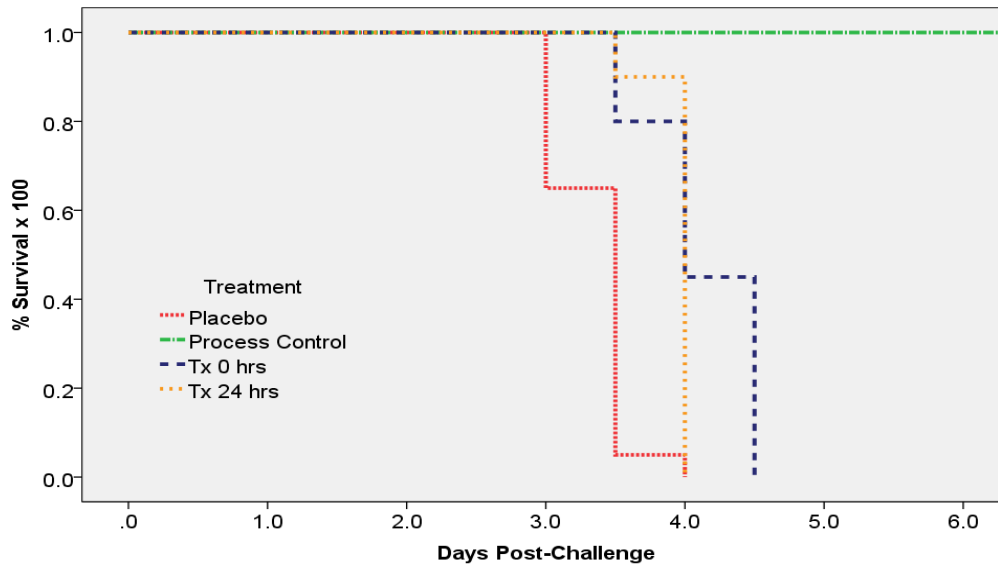
2896 **Table 5.9 Mean time to death (TTD) following SC challenge**

2897 Mice were SC challenged with  $2.3 \times 10^3$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2898 hyper-immune plasma, concentrated immunoglobulins, or *naïve* equine plasma at 0 hours or 24  
 2899 hours post-infection.

	0 hours	24 hours	p value
Hyper-Immune Plasma	2.150 days	1.675 days	p = 0.003a,b
Concentrated Immunoglobulins	7 days	6.833 days	p = 0.380a,c
Challenge Control	–	–	1.728 days
Treatment Control	–	–	7 days

2900

- 2901 a. Kruskal-Wallis test comparison of means
- 2902 b. Significance value for 0 hour native plasma group
- 2903 c. Significance value for 24 hour native plasma group
- 2904 d. p <0.001 for both 0 hr and 24 hr treatment group



2905

2906 **Figure 5.1 Kaplan Meier survival curve following IN challenge and treatment with hyper-**  
 2907 **immune plasma**

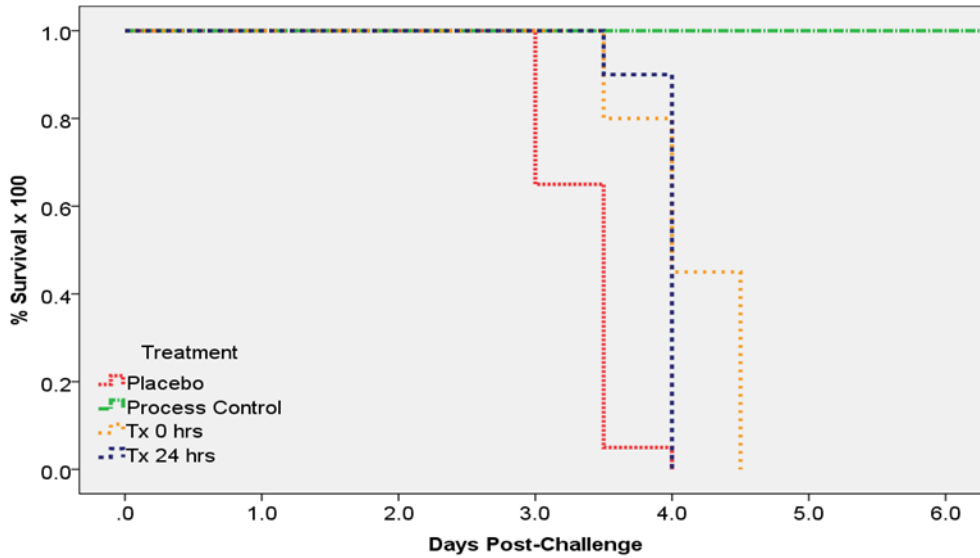
2908 Mice were IN challenged with  $1.5 \times 10^4$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2909 hyper-immune plasma or naïve equine plasma (placebo) at 0 hours or 24 hours post-infection.  
 2910 Process control mice were IN challenged with sterile PBS and treated with 0.8 ml of hyper-  
 2911 immune plasma at 0 hours.

2912

2913

2914

2915



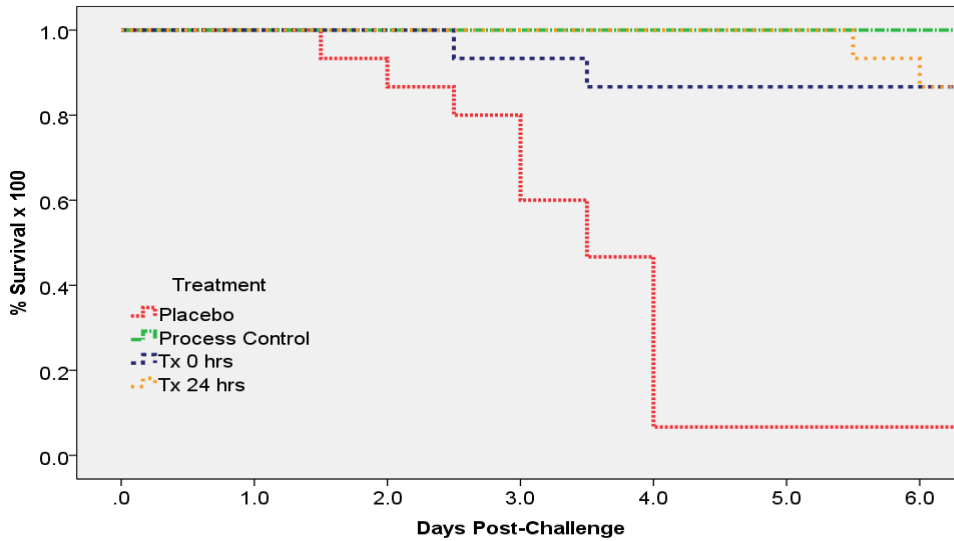
2916

2917 **Figure 5.2 Kaplan Meier survival curve following SC challenge and treatment with hyper-**  
 2918 **immune plasma**

2919 Mice were SC challenged with  $2.3 \times 10^3$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2920 hyper-immune plasma or naïve equine plasma (placebo) at 0 hours or 24 hours post-infection.

2921 Process control mice were SC challenged with sterile PBS and treated with 0.8 ml of hyper-

2922 immune plasma at 0 hours.



2923

2924 **Figure 5.3 Kaplan Meier survival curve following IN challenge and treatment with**  
 2925 **concentrated immunoglobulins**

2926 Mice were IN challenged with  $1.5 \times 10^4$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2927 concentrated immunoglobulins or *naïve* equine plasma (placebo) at 0 hours or 24 hours post-

2928 infection. Process control mice were IN challenged with sterile PBS and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2929 hyper-immune plasma at 0 hours.



2930

2931 **Figure 5.4 Kaplan Meier survival curve following SC challenge and treatment with**  
 2932 **concentrated immunoglobulins**

2933 Mice were SC challenged with  $2.3 \times 10^3$  *B. anthracis* Sterne strain and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2934 concentrated immunoglobulins or *naïve* equine plasma (placebo) at 0 hours or 24 hours post-  
 2935 infection. Process control mice were SC challenged with sterile PBS and treated with 0.8 ml of  
 2936 hyper-immune plasma at 0 hours.

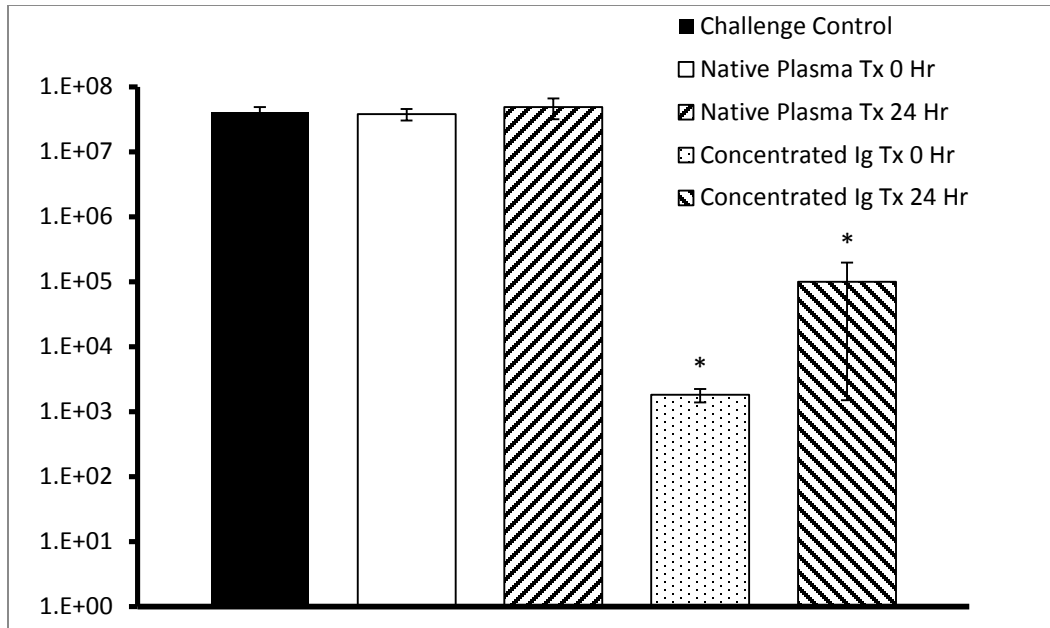
2937

2938 **Table 5.10 Mean colony forming units (CFUs)/ gram of tissue.** The lungs, liver and spleen  
 2939 were collected at necropsy from each mouse upon death. Each organ was weighed and  
 2940 homogenized then serially diluted 2 fold into sterile saline. Each dilution was plated onto BHI  
 2941 agar and the quantification of *B. anthracis* vegetative cells or spores was determined by the  
 2942 Miles and Mirsa method. Values represent the mean CFU/gram for each treatment group and  
 2943 challenge, NG = no quantifiable growth, *p* values denote significance compared to challenge  
 2944 control in Kruskal-Wallis comparison of means.

**Mean CFU/gram of tissue**

	IN Challenge		SC Challenge	
	Lung	Liver	Lung	Liver
Native Anti- <i>B. anthracis</i> Plasma 0 hour Treatment	3.80 x 10 <sup>7</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.412	NG	1.25 x 10 <sup>5</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.844	7.4 x 10 <sup>4</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.233
Native Anti- <i>B. anthracis</i> Plasma 24 hour Treatment	4.90 x 10 <sup>7</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.634	NG	1.38 x 10 <sup>5</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.472	7.75 x 10 <sup>4</sup> <i>p</i> = 0.380
Concentrated Immunoglobulins 0 hour Treatment	1.82 x 10 <sup>3</sup> <i>p</i> < 0.0001	NG	NG <i>p</i> < 0.0001	NG <i>p</i> < 0.0001
Concentrated Immunoglobulins 24 hour Treatment	9.94 x 10 <sup>4</sup> <i>p</i> < 0.0001	NG	NG <i>p</i> < 0.0001	1.22 x 10 <sup>4</sup> <i>p</i> < 0.0001
Challenge Control	7.57 x 10 <sup>7</sup>	NG	1.15 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	3.62 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
Treatment Control	NG	NG	NG	NG

2945

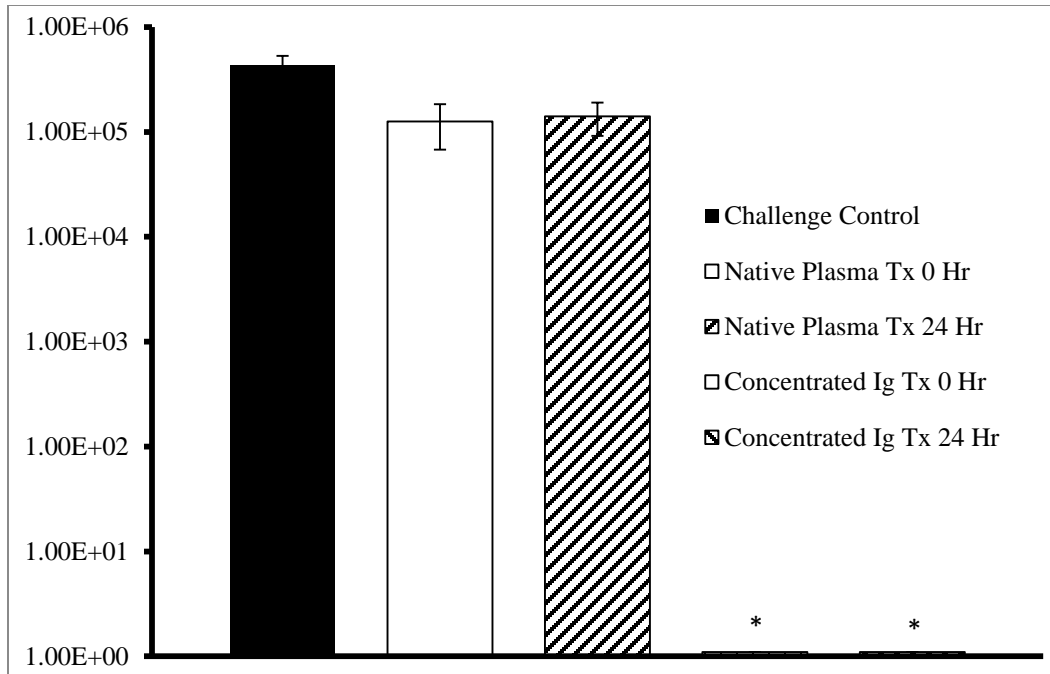


2946

2947 **Figure 5.5 CFU/gram of lung tissue from mice following IN challenge**

2948 Upon death the lungs of each mouse were harvested. Each organ was weighed and homogenized  
 2949 then serially diluted 2 fold into sterile saline. Each dilution was plated onto BHI agar and the  
 2950 quantification of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vegetative cells or spores was determined by the  
 2951 Miles and Mirsa method. All groups demonstrated significantly higher bacterial counts than  
 2952 treatment control mice. \* $p < 0.001$  compared to challenge control.

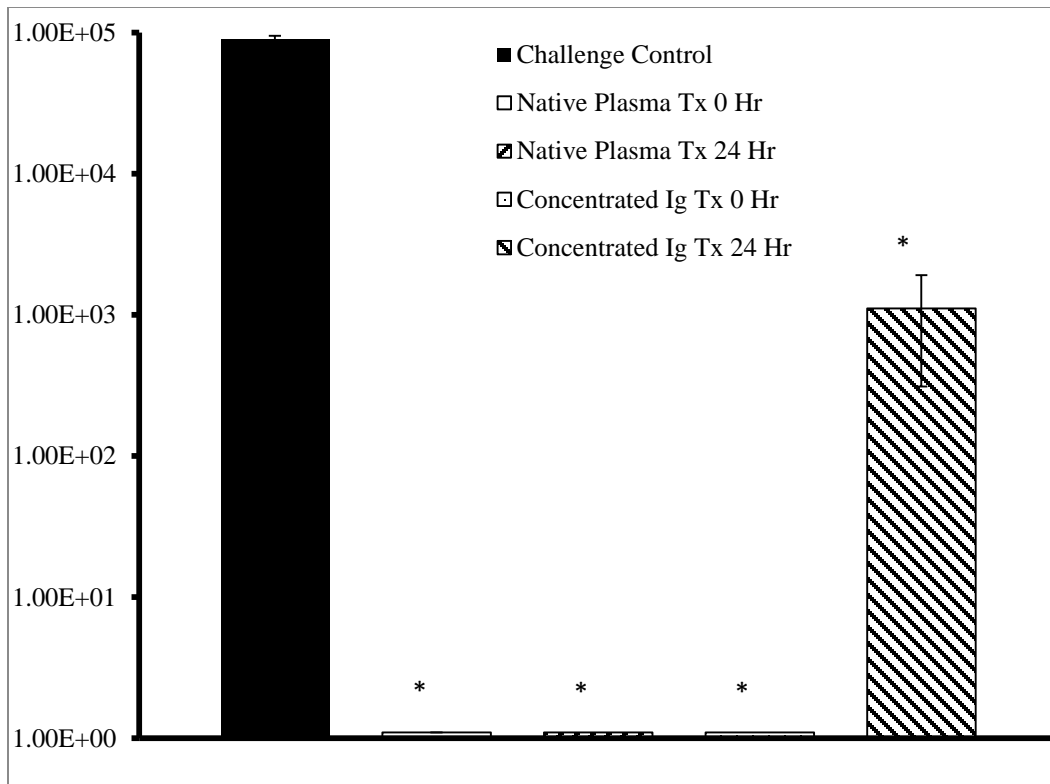




2953

2954 **Figure 5.6 CFU/gram of lung tissue from mice following SC challenge**

2955 Upon death the lungs of each mouse were harvested. Each organ was weighed and homogenized  
 2956 then serially diluted 2 fold into sterile saline. Each dilution was plated onto BHI agar and the  
 2957 quantification of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vegetative cells or spores was determined by the  
 2958 Miles and Mirsa method. All mice receiving concentrated IgG were not significantly different  
 2959 from the non-challenged control groups. \* $p < 0.001$  compared to challenge control.



2960

2961 **Figure 5.7 CFU/gram of liver tissue from mice following SC challenge**

2962 Upon death the liver of each mouse were harvested. Each organ was weighed and homogenized  
 2963 then serially diluted 2 fold into sterile saline. Each dilution was plated onto BHI agar and the  
 2964 quantification of *B. anthracis* Sterne strain vegetative cells or spores was determined by the  
 2965 Miles and Mirsa method. \* $p < 0.001$  compared to challenge control.

2966 **Chapter 6:**

2967 **Discussion**

2968 Protective antigen is a critical component of the protective immune response to *B.*  
2969 *anthracis* infection. The development of new vaccines and immunotherapies require a rapid and  
2970 accurate assessment of effectiveness during the initial stages of development. The studies  
2971 outlined here typify the path of development that new modalities can take in the demonstration  
2972 of effectiveness in preventing or treating anthrax. The use of immunoassays in the field of  
2973 anthrax vaccine and immunotherapeutics development has been well studied in laboratory  
2974 animal models, but very little information exists concerning their use in horses. In these studies  
2975 we have modified and adapted an ELISA for the quantitation of anti-PA immunoglobulins and a  
2976 cell culture toxin neutralization assay for horses vaccinated with the Sterne strain spore vaccine.

2977 The anti-PA ELISA described here is designed to titer anti-PA IgG in horses. This assay  
2978 has been established under good manufacturing practices with accompanying documentation and  
2979 validated according to parameters established by the International Conference on Harmonics  
2980 (ICH). Acceptance criteria for the validation of this assay were based on the performance of  
2981 similar ELISAs designed for the measurement of anti-PA immunoglobulins in other species.  
2982 This ELISA has been used to quantitate anti-PA antibodies in the plasma of horses immunized  
2983 against the attenuated *B. anthracis* Sterne strain. In addition, the plasma of horses immunized  
2984 with recombinant PA was also assayed. High anti-PA titers have repeatedly been shown as  
2985 significant correlates of immunity. ELISAs are fundamentally simple, rapid and require little  
2986 resource infrastructure for use. In the future, if we or others investigate additional potential

2987 vaccines or immunization routes in horses, this assay has demonstrated repeatability and  
2988 accuracy and would be the initial screening tool before moving into more expensive evaluations.

2989         One downfall of the anti-PA ELISA is the lack of information provided about antibody  
2990 affinity and neutralizing capacity of the hyper-immune plasma. Assessment of lethal toxin  
2991 neutralizing titers by the toxin neutralization assay has been shown to correlate with survival in  
2992 various animal models of infection. We adapted a practical cell culture assay that was used to  
2993 assess neutralizing antibodies in the horse. Mouse macrophage J774A.1 cells are exquisitely  
2994 sensitive to the effects of lethal toxin. Others have used this cell culture system to demonstrate  
2995 efficacy of anthrax therapeutics before scaling up to live animal use. Briefly, lethal toxin of  
2996 varying concentrations was pre-incubated with hyper-immune plasma or applied directly to a  
2997 monolayer of J774A.1 cells. Neutralization of the toxin was then quantitated through the  
2998 colorimetric change in a cell viability substrate. This study is the first to our knowledge to  
2999 quantify toxin neutralizing immunoglobulins in horses immunized against anthrax. A key finding  
3000 elaborated in the course of these investigations was the more diverse antigenic profile of this  
3001 hyper-immune plasma to the fully toxigenic spore vaccine, including the LF and EF antigens.  
3002 This likely conveys a greater level of toxin neutralization and protection than other monoclonal  
3003 preparations.

3004         In the final series of experiments the full protective capacity of the hyper-immune plasma  
3005 was evaluated in a validated mouse model. The A/J strain of mice is homozygous for *Naip5<sup>Lgn1-s</sup>*  
3006 which imparts reduced macrophage bactericidal activity and increased susceptibility to bacterial  
3007 infection. Welkos *et al.* defined this strain's susceptibility to *B. anthracis* Sterne strain by

3008 multiple routes of infection.<sup>251</sup> Interestingly, native or non-concentrated hyper-immune plasma  
3009 prolonged the life of treated mice compared to non-treated control mice, but did not result in full  
3010 survival. This suggests that native hyper-immune plasma is appropriate as an adjunct to  
3011 antimicrobial therapy but not as a solo therapy. Perhaps multiple administrations or continuous  
3012 rate infusions would provide a longer lasting effect and better treatment outcomes. The  
3013 prophylactic capacity of this hyper-immune plasma was not addresses in these studies.  
3014 Prophylactic passive transfer of anthrax specific antibodies has shown promise in other small  
3015 animal infection models suggesting that the timing and volume of native hyper-immune plasma  
3016 treatment needs further investigation. Alternatively, concentrated immunoglobulins alternatively  
3017 was sufficient in protecting treated mice following a single administration at the time of infection  
3018 or 24 hours post-infection. The concentrated immunoglobulins were produced by passing pooled  
3019 hyper-immune plasma through a protein A column. Another avenue of continued investigation in  
3020 this product needs to be a dose titration where the quantity of protective antibodies is established  
3021 and balanced across treatments. These infection studies were conducted over a 10 day period and  
3022 no attempt to quantitate the transferred antibodies or determine how long antibodies circulated in  
3023 treated mice was explored.

3024         Future directions in developing this hyper-immune plasma include many opportunities.  
3025 Most importantly is the evaluation of protection in other animal models and against fully virulent  
3026 strains, definition of the kinetics of the passively transferred antibodies, and refinement of the  
3027 appropriate plasma or concentrated immunoglobulin doses alone and in combination with  
3028 antimicrobial therapy. Additional steps in processing such as affinity purification and trypsin

3029 digestion that are needed to make this product safe for use in humans need to also be conducted  
3030 to determine their effect of protective efficacy. In summary, the results obtained in this series of  
3031 experiments demonstrate the value of *in vitro* assays for the development of equine source  
3032 immunotherapeutics and indicates that hyper-immune equine plasma is protective in defined  
3033 anthrax infection models. This work lays the foundation for further development as prevention  
3034 and treatment of anthrax in humans.

3035

**References:**

- 3036 1. Virgil, Fallon P, Fantham E, *et al.*. *Georgics. Oxford world's classics.* Oxford ;  
3037 New York: Oxford University Press,, 2006;xl, 109 p.
- 3038 2. Schwartz M. Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde: a short history of anthrax. *Mol Aspects*  
3039 *Med* 2009;30:347-355.
- 3040 3. Constantine, Terry BA, Massé J. *The Hippatrika of Constantine Porphyrogenitus*  
3041 *followed by A collection of veterinary aids, by Jean Massé, 1973.*
- 3042 4. Dirckx JH. Virgil on anthrax. *Am J Dermatopathol* 1981;3:191-195.
- 3043 5. Sternbach G. The history of anthrax. *J Emerg Med* 2003;24:463-467.
- 3044 6. Turnbull PC. Introduction: anthrax history, disease and ecology. *Curr Top*  
3045 *Microbiol Immunol* 2002;271:1-19.
- 3046 7. Brachman PS. Bioterrorism: an update with a focus on anthrax. *Am J Epidemiol*  
3047 2002;155:981-987.
- 3048 8. Leitenberg M. Biological weapons in the twentieth century: a review and analysis.  
3049 *Crit Rev Microbiol* 2001;27:267-320.
- 3050 9. Szinicz L. History of chemical and biological warfare agents. *Toxicology*  
3051 2005;214:167-181.
- 3052 10. Alibek K, Handelman S. *Biohazard : the chilling true story of the largest covert*  
3053 *biological weapons program in the world, told from the inside by the man who ran it.* 1st ed.  
3054 New York: Random House, 1999.
- 3055 11. Davis CJ. Nuclear blindness: An overview of the biological weapons programs of  
3056 the former Soviet Union and Iraq. *Emerg Infect Dis* 1999;5:509-512.
- 3057 12. Meselson M, Guillemin J, Hugh-Jones M, *et al.*. The Sverdlovsk anthrax outbreak  
3058 of 1979. *Science* 1994;266:1202-1208.
- 3059 13. Corbin J. Iraqi bio-scientist breaks silence. BBC One Panorama  
3060 BBC, 2003.
- 3061 14. Jernigan DB, Raghunathan PL, Bell BP, *et al.*. Investigation of bioterrorism-  
3062 related anthrax, United States, 2001: epidemiologic findings. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002;8:1019-  
3063 1028.

- 3064 15. Kaufmann AF, Meltzer MI, Schmid GP. The economic impact of a bioterrorist  
3065 attack: are prevention and postattack intervention programs justifiable? *Emerg Infect Dis*  
3066 1997;3:83-94.
- 3067 16. Wenner KA, Kenner JR. Anthrax. *Dermatol Clin* 2004;22:247-256, v.
- 3068 17. Turnbull PC, Cosivi O. Anthrax in Humans and Animals In: Organization WH,  
3069 ed. 4th ed. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press, 2008.
- 3070 18. Sirisanthana T, Nelson KE, Ezzell JW, *et al.*. Serological studies of patients with  
3071 cutaneous and oral-oropharyngeal anthrax from northern Thailand. *Am J Trop Med Hyg*  
3072 1988;39:575-581.
- 3073 19. Ash C, Farrow JA, Dorsch M, *et al.*. Comparative analysis of *Bacillus anthracis*,  
3074 *Bacillus cereus*, and related species on the basis of reverse transcriptase sequencing of 16S  
3075 rRNA. *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 1991;41:343-346.
- 3076 20. Ash C, Collins MD. Comparative analysis of 23S ribosomal RNA gene sequences  
3077 of *Bacillus anthracis* and emetic *Bacillus cereus* determined by PCR-direct sequencing. *FEMS*  
3078 *Microbiol Lett* 1992;73:75-80.
- 3079 21. Turnbull PCB. Definitive identification of *Bacillus anthracis* - A review. *Journal*  
3080 *of Applied Microbiology* 1999;87:237-240.
- 3081 22. Helgason E, Okstad OA, Caugant DA, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis*, *Bacillus cereus*,  
3082 and *Bacillus thuringiensis*--one species on the basis of genetic evidence. *Appl Environ Microbiol*  
3083 2000;66:2627-2630.
- 3084 23. Helgason E, Tourasse NJ, Meisal R, *et al.*. Multilocus Sequence Typing Scheme  
3085 for Bacteria of the *Bacillus cereus* Group. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*  
3086 2004;70:191-201.
- 3087 24. Lechner S, Mayr R, Francis KP, *et al.*. *Bacillus weihenstephanensis* sp. nov. is a  
3088 new psychrotolerant species of the *Bacillus cereus* group. *International Journal of Systematic*  
3089 *Bacteriology* 1998;48:1373-1382.
- 3090 25. Candela T, Mock M, Fouet A. CapE, a 47-amino-acid peptide, is necessary for  
3091 *Bacillus anthracis* polyglutamate capsule synthesis. *Journal of Bacteriology* 2005;187:7765-  
3092 7772.
- 3093 26. Makino SI, Uchida I, Terakado N, *et al.*. Molecular characterization and protein  
3094 analysis of the cap region, which is essential for encapsulation in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Journal of*  
3095 *Bacteriology* 1989;171:722-730.



- 3096 27. Okinaka R, Cloud K, Hampton O, *et al.*. Sequence, assembly and analysis of px01  
3097 and px02. *Journal of Applied Microbiology* 1999;87:261-262.
- 3098 28. Priest FG, Barker M, Baillie LW, *et al.*. Population structure and evolution of the  
3099 *Bacillus cereus* group. *J Bacteriol* 2004;186:7959-7970.
- 3100 29. Zhong W, Shou Y, Yoshida TM, *et al.*. Differentiation of *Bacillus anthracis*, *B.*  
3101 *cereus*, and *B. thuringiensis* by using pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. *Appl Environ Microbiol*  
3102 2007;73:3446-3449.
- 3103 30. Hoffmaster AR, Ravel J, Rasko DA, *et al.*. Identification of anthrax toxin genes in  
3104 a *Bacillus cereus* associated with an illness resembling inhalation anthrax. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U*  
3105 *S A* 2004;101:8449-8454.
- 3106 31. Qi Y, Patra G, Liang X, *et al.*. Utilization of the *rpoB* gene as a specific  
3107 chromosomal marker for real-time PCR detection of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Appl Environ Microbiol*  
3108 2001;67:3720-3727.
- 3109 32. Van Ert MN, Easterday WR, Huynh LY, *et al.*. Global genetic population  
3110 structure of *Bacillus anthracis*. *PLoS One* 2007;2:e461.
- 3111 33. Pearson T, Busch JD, Ravel J, *et al.*. Phylogenetic discovery bias in *Bacillus*  
3112 *anthracis* using single-nucleotide polymorphisms from whole-genome sequencing. *Proceedings*  
3113 *of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 2004;101:13536-13541.
- 3114 34. Pearson T, Okinaka RT, Foster JT, *et al.*. Phylogenetic understanding of clonal  
3115 populations in an era of whole genome sequencing. *Infect Genet Evol* 2009;9:1010-1019.
- 3116 35. Gierczyński R, Kałuzewski S, Rakin A, *et al.*. Intriguing diversity of *Bacillus*  
3117 *anthracis* in eastern Poland - The molecular echoes of the past outbreaks. *FEMS Microbiology*  
3118 *Letters* 2004;239:235-240.
- 3119 36. Keim P, Price LB, Klevytska AM, *et al.*. Multiple-locus variable-number tandem  
3120 repeat analysis reveals genetic relationships within *Bacillus anthracis*. *Journal of Bacteriology*  
3121 2000;182:2928-2936.
- 3122 37. Ravel J, Jiang L, Stanley ST, *et al.*. The complete genome sequence of *Bacillus*  
3123 *anthracis* Ames "Ancestor". *Journal of Bacteriology* 2009;91:445-446.
- 3124 38. Read TD, Peterson SN, Tourasse N, *et al.*. The genome sequence of *Bacillus*  
3125 *anthracis* Ames and comparison to closely related bacteria. *Nature* 2003;423:81-86.
- 3126 39. Leppla SH. Production and purification of anthrax toxin. *Methods Enzymol*  
3127 1988;165:103-116.

- 3128 40. Drysdale M, Bourgoigne A, Hilsenbeck SG, *et al.*. atxA controls Bacillus anthracis  
3129 capsule synthesis via acpA and a newly discovered regulator, acpB. *J Bacteriol* 2004;186:307-  
3130 315.
- 3131 41. Drysdale M, Heninger S, Hutt J, *et al.*. Capsule synthesis by Bacillus anthracis is  
3132 required for dissemination in murine inhalation anthrax. *EMBO J* 2005;24:221-227.
- 3133 42. Green BD, Battisti L, Koehler TM, *et al.*. Demonstration of a capsule plasmid in  
3134 Bacillus anthracis. *Infect Immun* 1985;49:291-297.
- 3135 43. Koehler TM, Dai Z, Kaufman-Yarbray M. Regulation of the Bacillus anthracis  
3136 protective antigen gene: CO<sub>2</sub> and a trans-acting element activate transcription from one of two  
3137 promoters. *Journal of Bacteriology* 1994;176:586-595.
- 3138 44. Sirard JC, Mock M, Fouet A. The three Bacillus anthracis toxin genes are  
3139 coordinately regulated by bicarbonate and temperature. *Journal of Bacteriology* 1994;176:5188-  
3140 5192.
- 3141 45. Bartkus JM, Leppla SH. Transcriptional regulation of the protective antigen gene  
3142 of Bacillus anthracis. *Infection and Immunity* 1989;57:2295-2300.
- 3143 46. Marston CK, Gee JE, Popovic T, *et al.*. Molecular approaches to identify and  
3144 differentiate Bacillus anthracis from phenotypically similar Bacillus species isolates. *BMC*  
3145 *Microbiol* 2006;6:22.
- 3146 47. Klee SR, Özel M, Appel B, *et al.*. Characterization of Bacillus anthracis-like  
3147 bacteria isolated from wild great apes from Côte d'Ivoire and Cameroon. *Journal of Bacteriology*  
3148 2006;188:5333-5344.
- 3149 48. Liang X, Yu D. Identification of bacillus anthracis strains in China. *Journal of*  
3150 *Applied Microbiology* 1999;87:200-203.
- 3151 49. Cavallo JD, Ramisse F, Girardet M, *et al.*. Antibiotic susceptibilities of 96 isolates  
3152 of Bacillus anthracis isolated in France between 1994 and 2000. *Antimicrobial Agents and*  
3153 *Chemotherapy* 2002;46:2307-2309.
- 3154 50. Mohammed MJ, Marston CK, Popovic T, *et al.*. Antimicrobial susceptibility  
3155 testing of Bacillus anthracis: Comparison of results obtained by using the National Committee  
3156 for Clinical Laboratory Standards broth microdilution reference and estest agar gradient diffusion  
3157 methods. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* 2002;40:1902-1907.
- 3158 51. Odendaal MW, Pieterse PM, de Vos V, *et al.*. The antibiotic sensitivity patterns  
3159 of Bacillus anthracis isolated from the Kruger National Park. *Onderstepoort Journal of*  
3160 *Veterinary Research* 1991;58:17-19.

- 3161 52. Chen Y, Succi J, Tenover FC, *et al.*.  $\beta$ -lactamase genes of the penicillin-  
3162 susceptible *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne strain. *Journal of Bacteriology* 2003;185:823-830.
- 3163 53. Chen Y, Tenover FC, Koehler TM.  $\beta$ -lactamase gene expression in a penicillin-  
3164 resistant *Bacillus anthracis* strain. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* 2004;48:4873-4877.
- 3165 54. Ross CL, Thomason KS, Koehler TM. An extracytoplasmic function sigma factor  
3166 controls beta-lactamase gene expression in *Bacillus anthracis* and other *Bacillus cereus* group  
3167 species. *J Bacteriol* 2009;191:6683-6693.
- 3168 55. Charlton S, Herbert M, McGlashan J, *et al.*. A study of the physiology of *Bacillus*  
3169 *anthracis* Sterne during manufacture of the UK acellular anthrax vaccine. *Journal of Applied*  
3170 *Microbiology* 2007;103:1453-1460.
- 3171 56. Lee K, Costerton JW, Ravel J, *et al.*. Phenotypic and functional characterization  
3172 of *Bacillus anthracis* biofilms. *Microbiology* 2007;153:1693-1701.
- 3173 57. Lincoln RE, Hodges DR, Klein F, *et al.*. Role of the lymphatics in the  
3174 pathogenesis of anthrax. *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 1965;115:481-494.
- 3175 58. Leighton TJ, Doi RH. The stability of messenger ribonucleic acid during  
3176 sporulation in *Bacillus subtilis*. *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 1971;246:3189-3195.
- 3177 59. Schaeffer P, Millet J, Aubert JP. Catabolic repression of bacterial sporulation.  
3178 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 1965;54:704-  
3179 711.
- 3180 60. Tarr HL. Some observations on the respiratory catalysts present in the spores and  
3181 vegetative cells of certain aerobic bacilli. *Biochem J* 1933;27:136-145.
- 3182 61. Thorne CB. Transduction in *Bacillus subtilis*. *Journal of bacteriology*  
3183 1962;83:106-111.
- 3184 62. Turnbull PCB, Frawley DA, Bull RL. Heat activation/shock temperatures for  
3185 *Bacillus anthracis* spores and the issue of spore plate counts versus true numbers of spores.  
3186 *Journal of Microbiological Methods* 2007;68:353-357.
- 3187 63. Battisti L, Green BD, Thorne CB. Mating system for transfer of plasmids among  
3188 *Bacillus anthracis*, *Bacillus cereus*, and *Bacillus thuringiensis*. *Journal of Bacteriology*  
3189 1985;162:543-550.
- 3190 64. Puziss M, Wright GG. Studies on immunity in anthrax. VII. Carbohydrate  
3191 metabolism of *Bacillus anthracis* in relation to elaboration of protective antigen. *Journal of*  
3192 *bacteriology* 1959;78:137-145.

- 3193            65.    Thorne CB. *Bacillus subtilis* and Other Gram-Positive Bacteria: Biochemistry,  
3194            Physiology, and Molecular Genetics In: A.L. Sonenshein JAH, R. Losick, ed. *Bacillus anthracis*.  
3195            Washington, DC American Society for Microbiology, 1993;pp. 113–124.
- 3196            66.    Dai Z, Koehler TM. Regulation of anthrax toxin activator gene (*atxA*) expression  
3197            in *Bacillus anthracis*: Temperature, not CO<sub>2</sub>/bicarbonate, affects *atxA* synthesis. *Infection and*  
3198            *Immunity* 1997;65:2576-2582.
- 3199            67.    Passalacqua KD, Bergman NH, Jung YL, *et al.*. The global transcriptional  
3200            responses of *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne (34F 2) and a  $\Delta$ *sodA1* mutant to paraquat reveal metal ion  
3201            homeostasis imbalances during endogenous superoxide stress. *Journal of Bacteriology*  
3202            2007;189:3996-4013.
- 3203            68.    Yang H, Miller JH. Deletion of *dnaN1* generates a mutator phenotype in *Bacillus*  
3204            *anthracis*. *DNA Repair* 2008;7:507-514.
- 3205            69.    Turnbull PCB. Introduction: Anthrax history, disease and ecology, 2002;1-19.
- 3206            70.    Driks A, Setlow P. Morphogenesis and properties of the bacterial spore.  
3207            *Prokaryotic Development* 2000:191-218.
- 3208            71.    Setlow P. I will survive: DNA protection in bacterial spores. *Trends in*  
3209            *Microbiology* 2007;15:172-180.
- 3210            72.    Setlow P. Spore germination. *Current Opinion in Microbiology* 2003;6:550-556.
- 3211            73.    Kornberg A, Spudich JA, Nelson DL, *et al.*. Origin of proteins in sporulation.  
3212            *Annual Review of Biochemistry* 1968;37:51-78.
- 3213            74.    Warth AD, Ohye DF, Murrell WG. The composition and structure of bacterial  
3214            spores. *The Journal of cell biology* 1963;16:579-592.
- 3215            75.    Chada VGR, Sanstad EA, Wang R, *et al.*. Morphogenesis of *Bacillus* Spore  
3216            Surfaces. *Journal of Bacteriology* 2003;185:6255-6261.
- 3217            76.    Driks A. *Bacillus subtilis* spore coat. *Microbiology and Molecular Biology*  
3218            *Reviews* 1999;63:1-20.
- 3219            77.    Plomp M, Leighton TJ, Wheeler KE, *et al.*. The high-resolution architecture and  
3220            structural dynamics of *Bacillus* spores. *Biophys J* 2005;88:603-608.
- 3221            78.    Plomp M, Leighton TJ, Wheeler KE, *et al.*. Architecture and high-resolution  
3222            structure of *Bacillus thuringiensis* and *Bacillus cereus* spore coat surfaces. *Langmuir*  
3223            2005;21:7892-7898.

- 3224 79. Aronson AI, Fitz James P. Structure and morphogenesis of the bacterial spore  
3225 coat. *Bacteriological Reviews* 1976;40:360-402.
- 3226 80. Henriques AO, Moran Jr CP. Structure, assembly, and function of the spore  
3227 surface layers, 2007;555-588.
- 3228 81. Klobutcher LA, Ragkousi K, Setlow P. The *Bacillus subtilis* spore coat provides  
3229 "eat resistance" during phagocytic predation by the protozoan *Tetrahymena thermophila*.  
3230 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 2006;103:165-  
3231 170.
- 3232 82. Laaberki MH, Dworkin J. Role of spore coat proteins in the resistance of *Bacillus*  
3233 *subtilis* spores to *Caenorhabditis elegans* predation. *Journal of Bacteriology* 2008;190:6197-  
3234 6203.
- 3235 83. Setlow P. Spores of *Bacillus subtilis*: Their resistance to and killing by radiation,  
3236 heat and chemicals. *Journal of Applied Microbiology* 2006;101:514-525.
- 3237 84. Santo LY, Doi RH. Ultrastructural analysis during germination and outgrowth of  
3238 *Bacillus subtilis* spores. *Journal of Bacteriology* 1974;120:475-481.
- 3239 85. Hannay CL. The parasporal body of *Bacillus laterosporus* Laubach. *The Journal*  
3240 *of biophysical and biochemical cytology* 1957;3:1001-1010.
- 3241 86. La Duc MT, Satomi M, Venkateswaran K. *Bacillus odysseyi* sp. nov., a round-  
3242 spore-forming bacillus isolated from the Mars Odyssey spacecraft. *International Journal of*  
3243 *Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* 2004;54:195-201.
- 3244 87. Vary PS. Prime time for *Bacillus megaterium*. *Microbiology* 1994;140:1001-  
3245 1013.
- 3246 88. Tournier JN, Ulrich RG, Quesnel-Hellmann A, *et al.*. Anthrax, toxins and  
3247 vaccines: A 125-year journey targeting *Bacillus anthracis*. *Expert Review of Anti-Infective*  
3248 *Therapy* 2009;7:219-236.
- 3249 89. Fox A, Stewart GC, Waller LN, *et al.*. Carbohydrates and glycoproteins of  
3250 *Bacillus anthracis* and related bacilli: Targets for biodetection. *Journal of Microbiological*  
3251 *Methods* 2003;54:143-152.
- 3252 90. Boydston JA, Chen P, Steichen CT, *et al.*. Orientation within the exosporium and  
3253 structural stability of the collagen-like glycoprotein BclA of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Journal of*  
3254 *Bacteriology* 2005;187:5310-5317.

- 3255 91. Giorno R, Mallozzi M, Bozue J, *et al.*. Localization and assembly of proteins  
3256 comprising the outer structures of the Bacillus anthracis spore. *Microbiology* 2009;155:1133-  
3257 1145.
- 3258 92. Steichen C, Chen P, Kearney JF, *et al.*. Identification of the immunodominant  
3259 protein and other proteins of the Bacillus anthracis exosporium. *Journal of Bacteriology*  
3260 2003;185:1903-1910.
- 3261 93. Sylvestre P, Couture-Tosi E, Mock M. A collagen-like surface glycoprotein is a  
3262 structural component of the Bacillus anthracis exosporium. *Molecular Microbiology*  
3263 2002;45:169-178.
- 3264 94. Sylvestre P, Couture-Tosi E, Mock M. Polymorphism in the collagen-like region  
3265 of the Bacillus anthracis BclA protein leads to variation in exosporium filament length. *Journal*  
3266 *of Bacteriology* 2003;185:1555-1563.
- 3267 95. Mehta AS, Saile E, Zhong W, *et al.*. Synthesis and antigenic analysis of the BclA  
3268 glycoprotein oligosaccharide from the Bacillus anthracis exosporium. *Chemistry - A European*  
3269 *Journal* 2006;12:9136-9149.
- 3270 96. Thompson BM, Hoelscher BC, Driks A, *et al.*. Localization and assembly of the  
3271 novel exosporium protein BetA of Bacillus anthracis. *J Bacteriol* 2011;193:5098-5104.
- 3272 97. Bozue J, Cote CK, Moody KL, *et al.*. Fully virulent Bacillus anthracis does not  
3273 require the immunodominant protein BclA for pathogenesis. *Infection and Immunity*  
3274 2007;75:508-511.
- 3275 98. Brahmabhatt TN, Janes BK, Stibitz ES, *et al.*. Bacillus anthracis exosporium  
3276 protein BclA affects spore germination, interaction with extracellular matrix proteins, and  
3277 hydrophobicity. *Infection and Immunity* 2007;75:5233-5239.
- 3278 99. Giorno R, Bozue J, Cote C, *et al.*. Morphogenesis of the Bacillus anthracis spore.  
3279 *Journal of Bacteriology* 2007;189:691-705.
- 3280 100. Thompson BM, Waller LN, Fox KF, *et al.*. The BclB glycoprotein of Bacillus  
3281 anthracis is involved in exosporium integrity. *Journal of Bacteriology* 2007;189:6704-6713.
- 3282 101. Holt SC, Leadbetter ER. Comparative ultrastructure of selected aerobic spore-  
3283 forming bacteria: a freeze-etching study. *Bacteriological reviews* 1969;33:346-378.
- 3284 102. Errington J. Regulation of endospore formation in Bacillus subtilis. *Nature*  
3285 *reviews Microbiology* 2003;1:117-126.
- 3286 103. Losick R, Youngman P, Piggot PJ. Genetics of endospore formation in Bacillus  
3287 subtilis. *Annual Review of Genetics* 1986;20:625-669.

- 3288 104. Onyenwoke RU, Brill JA, Farahi K, *et al.*. Sporulation genes in members of the  
3289 low G+C Gram-type-positive phylogenetic branch (Firmicutes). *Archives of Microbiology*  
3290 2004;182:182-192.
- 3291 105. Piggot P, Losick R. *Bacillus subtilis and Its Closest Relatives: From Genes to*  
3292 *Cells, Sporulation Genes and Intercompartmental Regulation* 2002:483-517.
- 3293 106. Piggot PJ, Coote JG. Genetic aspects of bacterial endospore formation.  
3294 *Bacteriological Reviews* 1976;40:908-962.
- 3295 107. Steichen CT, Kearney JF, Turnbough Jr CL. Non-uniform assembly of the  
3296 *Bacillus anthracis* exosporium and a bottle cap model for spore germination and outgrowth.  
3297 *Molecular Microbiology* 2007;64:359-367.
- 3298 108. Hoch JA. Regulation of the phosphorelay and the initiation of sporulation in  
3299 *Bacillus subtilis*. *Annual Review of Microbiology* 1993;47:441-465.
- 3300 109. Viratt Ja. [Long duration of viability of  
3301 spores of *Bacillus anthracis*]. *Annales de l'Institut Pasteur* 1954;87:215-217.
- 3302 110. Wilson JB, Russell KE. ISOLATION OF BACILLUS ANTHRACIS FROM  
3303 SOIL STORED 60 YEARS. *J Bacteriol* 1964;87:237-238.
- 3304 111. De Vos V. The ecology of anthrax in the Kruger  
3305 National Park, South Africa. *Salisbury Medical Bulletin* 1990;68S:19-23.
- 3306 112. Turnbull PC, Hutson RA, Ward MJ, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis* but not always  
3307 anthrax. *J Appl Bacteriol* 1992;72:21-28.
- 3308 113. Webster AJ. Weather and infectious disease in cattle. *Veterinary Record*  
3309 1981;108:183-187.
- 3310 114. WMO. 'Hot Weather Stress', Chap 3, in Animal health and production at  
3311 extremes of weather, Technical Note No. 191 In: WMO, ed. Geneva, Switzerland: World  
3312 Meteorological Organization, 1989;61-122.
- 3313 115. Higgins CH. Anthrax. Bulletin No. 23 In: Agriculture CDo, ed. Ottawa, CN:  
3314 Canada Department of Agriculture 1916.
- 3315 116. Van Ness G, Stein CD. Soils of the United States favorable for anthrax. *Journal*  
3316 *of the American Veterinary Medical Association* 1956;128:7-12.

- 3317 117. D.S. Fanning MCBF. *Soil Morphology, Genesis and Classification*. New York:  
3318 John Wiley & Sons, 1989.
- 3319 118. Cherkasski BL. Anthrax Epidemiology and Prophylaxis In: Moscow, ed.  
3320 Moscow, 2002.
- 3321 119. Kas'ianenko AM, Verner OM, Zaviriukha AM, *et al.*. Mapping method in the  
3322 epidemiological study of infections and infestations. II. Soil characteristics in localities  
3323 permanently at risk for anthrax. *Kartograficheskiĭ metod pri ėpidemiologicheskom issledovanii*  
3324 *infektsii i invazii Soobshchenie II Kharakteristika pochv v statsionarno neblagopoluchnykh po*  
3325 *sibirskoĭ iazve punktakh* 1984:90-95.
- 3326 120. Kolonin GV. Nosogeography of anthrax in the USSR with regard to its regional  
3327 epizootology. *Nozogeografiia sibirskoĭ iazvy v SSSR v sviazi s ee landshaftnoĭ ėpizootologieĭ*  
3328 1969;46:91-97.
- 3329 121. Smith KL, De Vos V, Bryden HB, *et al.*. Meso-scale ecology of anthrax in  
3330 Southern Africa: A pilot study of diversity and clustering. *Journal of Applied Microbiology*  
3331 1999;87:204-207.
- 3332 122. Hugh-Jones M, Blackburn J. The ecology of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Aspects Med*  
3333 2009;30:356-367.
- 3334 123. Swiderski R. *Anthrax: A history*. Jefferson North Carolina: McFarland and  
3335 Company, Inc, 2004.
- 3336 124. Dragon DC, Rennie RP. The ecology of anthrax spores: tough but not invincible.  
3337 *Canadian Veterinary Journal* 1995;36:295-301.
- 3338 125. Turner AJ, Galvin JW, Rubira RJ, *et al.*. Experiences with vaccination and  
3339 epidemiological investigations on an anthrax outbreak in Australia in 1997. *Journal of Applied*  
3340 *Microbiology* 1999;87:294-297.
- 3341 126. Fisher N, Hanna P. Characterization of *Bacillus anthracis* germinant receptors in  
3342 vitro. *J Bacteriol* 2005;187:8055-8062.
- 3343 127. Chesnokova ON, McPherson SA, Steichen CT, *et al.*. The spore-specific alanine  
3344 racemase of *Bacillus anthracis* and its role in suppressing germination during spore development.  
3345 *J Bacteriol* 2009;191:1303-1310.
- 3346 128. Ireland JA, Hanna PC. Amino acid- and purine ribonucleoside-induced  
3347 germination of *Bacillus anthracis* DeltaSterne endospores: gerS mediates responses to aromatic  
3348 ring structures. *J Bacteriol* 2002;184:1296-1303.



- 3349 129. Read TD, Peterson SN, Tourasse N, *et al.*. The genome sequence of *Bacillus*  
3350 anthracis Ames and comparison to closely related bacteria. *Nature* 2003;423:81-86.
- 3351 130. Guidi-Rontani C, Pereira Y, Ruffie S, *et al.*. Identification and characterization of  
3352 a germination operon on the virulence plasmid pXO1 of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Microbiol*  
3353 1999;33:407-414.
- 3354 131. Cataldi A, Mock M, Bentancor L. Characterization of *Bacillus anthracis* strains  
3355 used for vaccination. *J Appl Microbiol* 2000;88:648-654.
- 3356 132. Baillie L, Read TD. *Bacillus anthracis*, a bug with attitude! *Curr Opin Microbiol*  
3357 2001;4:78-81.
- 3358 133. Okinaka RT, Cloud K, Hampton O, *et al.*. Sequence and organization of pXO1,  
3359 the large *Bacillus anthracis* plasmid harboring the anthrax toxin genes. *J Bacteriol*  
3360 1999;181:6509-6515.
- 3361 134. Petosa C, Collier RJ, Klimpel KR, *et al.*. Crystal structure of the anthrax toxin  
3362 protective antigen. *Nature* 1997;385:833-838.
- 3363 135. Xu Q, Heseck ED, Zeng M. Transcriptional stimulation of anthrax toxin receptors  
3364 by anthrax edema toxin and *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne spore. *Microb Pathog* 2007;43:37-45.
- 3365 136. Bradley KA, Mogridge J, Mourez M, *et al.*. Identification of the cellular receptor  
3366 for anthrax toxin. *Nature* 2001;414:225-229.
- 3367 137. Gordon VM, Klimpel KR, Arora N, *et al.*. Proteolytic activation of bacterial  
3368 toxins by eukaryotic cells is performed by furin and by additional cellular proteases. *Infect*  
3369 *Immun* 1995;63:82-87.
- 3370 138. Marston CK, Hoffmaster AR, Wilson KE, *et al.*. Effects of long-term storage on  
3371 plasmid stability in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2005;71:7778-7780.
- 3372 139. Kurzchalia T. Anthrax toxin rafts into cells. *J Cell Biol* 2003;160:295-296.
- 3373 140. Ren G, Quispe J, Leppla SH, *et al.*. Large-scale structural changes accompany  
3374 binding of lethal factor to anthrax protective antigen: a cryo-electron microscopic study.  
3375 *Structure* 2004;12:2059-2066.
- 3376 141. Mei Q, Fredrickson CK, Lian W, *et al.*. Ricin detection by biological signal  
3377 amplification in a well-in-a-well device. *Anal Chem* 2006;78:7659-7664.
- 3378 142. Hoeflich KP, Ikura M. Calmodulin in action: diversity in target recognition and  
3379 activation mechanisms. *Cell* 2002;108:739-742.

- 3380 143. Mesnage S, Tosi-Couture E, Gounon P, *et al.*. The capsule and S-layer: two  
3381 independent and yet compatible macromolecular structures in *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Bacteriol*  
3382 1998;180:52-58.
- 3383 144. Drum CL, Yan SZ, Bard J, *et al.*. Structural basis for the activation of anthrax  
3384 adenylyl cyclase exotoxin by calmodulin. *Nature* 2002;415:396-402.
- 3385 145. O'Brien J, Friedlander A, Dreier T, *et al.*. Effects of anthrax toxin components on  
3386 human neutrophils. *Infect Immun* 1985;47:306-310.
- 3387 146. Wright GG, Mandell GL. Anthrax toxin blocks priming of neutrophils by  
3388 lipopolysaccharide and by muramyl dipeptide. *J Exp Med* 1986;164:1700-1709.
- 3389 147. Hoover DL, Friedlander AM, Rogers LC, *et al.*. Anthrax edema toxin  
3390 differentially regulates lipopolysaccharide-induced monocyte production of tumor necrosis factor  
3391 alpha and interleukin-6 by increasing intracellular cyclic AMP. *Infect Immun* 1994;62:4432-  
3392 4439.
- 3393 148. Tournier JN, Quesnel-Hellmann A, Mathieu J, *et al.*. Anthrax edema toxin  
3394 cooperates with lethal toxin to impair cytokine secretion during infection of dendritic cells. *J*  
3395 *Immunol* 2005;174:4934-4941.
- 3396 149. Firoved AM, Miller GF, Moayeri M, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis* edema toxin causes  
3397 extensive tissue lesions and rapid lethality in mice. *Am J Pathol* 2005;167:1309-1320.
- 3398 150. Cui X, Li Y, Li X, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis* edema and lethal toxin have different  
3399 hemodynamic effects but function together to worsen shock and outcome in a rat model. *J Infect*  
3400 *Dis* 2007;195:572-580.
- 3401 151. Lovchik JA, Drysdale M, Koehler TM, *et al.*. Expression of either lethal toxin or  
3402 edema toxin by *Bacillus anthracis* is sufficient for virulence in a rabbit model of inhalational  
3403 anthrax. *Infect Immun* 2012;80:2414-2425.
- 3404 152. Duesbery NS, Webb CP, Leppla SH, *et al.*. Proteolytic inactivation of MAP-  
3405 kinase-kinase by anthrax lethal factor. *Science* 1998;280:734-737.
- 3406 153. Hanna P. Lethal toxin actions and their consequences. *J Appl Microbiol*  
3407 1999;87:285-287.
- 3408 154. Leppla S. *National Academy of Science*, 1982.
- 3409 155. Pezard C, Berche P, Mock M. Contribution of individual toxin components to  
3410 virulence of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Infect Immun* 1991;59:3472-3477.

- 3411 156. Pellizzari R, Guidi-Rontani C, Vitale G, *et al.*. Anthrax lethal factor cleaves  
3412 MKK3 in macrophages and inhibits the LPS/IFN $\gamma$ -induced release of NO and TNF $\alpha$ .  
3413 *FEBS Lett* 1999;462:199-204.
- 3414 157. Vitale G, Bernardi L, Napolitani G, *et al.*. Susceptibility of mitogen-activated  
3415 protein kinase kinase family members to proteolysis by anthrax lethal factor. *Biochem J*  
3416 2000;352 Pt 3:739-745.
- 3417 158. Kim SO, Jing Q, Hoebe K, *et al.*. Sensitizing anthrax lethal toxin-resistant  
3418 macrophages to lethal toxin-induced killing by tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$ . *J Biol Chem*  
3419 2003;278:7413-7421.
- 3420 159. Kau JH, Lin CG, Huang HH, *et al.*. Calyculin A sensitive protein phosphatase is  
3421 required for Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin induced cytotoxicity. *Curr Microbiol* 2002;44:106-  
3422 111.
- 3423 160. Cui X, Li Y, Moayeri M, *et al.*. Late treatment with a protective antigen-directed  
3424 monoclonal antibody improves hemodynamic function and survival in a lethal toxin-infused rat  
3425 model of anthrax sepsis. *J Infect Dis* 2005;191:422-434.
- 3426 161. Sherer K, Li Y, Cui X, *et al.*. Lethal and edema toxins in the pathogenesis of  
3427 Bacillus anthracis septic shock: implications for therapy. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*  
3428 2007;175:211-221.
- 3429 162. Comer JE, Chopra AK, Peterson JW, *et al.*. Direct inhibition of T-lymphocyte  
3430 activation by anthrax toxins in vivo. *Infect Immun* 2005;73:8275-8281.
- 3431 163. Park JM, Greten FR, Li ZW, *et al.*. Macrophage apoptosis by anthrax lethal factor  
3432 through p38 MAP kinase inhibition. *Science* 2002;297:2048-2051.
- 3433 164. Popova TG, Millis B, Bailey C, *et al.*. Platelets, inflammatory cells, von  
3434 Willebrand factor, syndecan-1, fibrin, fibronectin, and bacteria co-localize in the liver thrombi of  
3435 Bacillus anthracis-infected mice. *Microb Pathog* 2012;52:1-9.
- 3436 165. Ghosh CC, Mukherjee A, David S, *et al.*. Impaired function of the Tie-2 receptor  
3437 contributes to vascular leakage and lethality in anthrax. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*  
3438 2012;109:10024-10029.
- 3439 166. Fang H, Cordoba-Rodriguez R, Lankford CS, *et al.*. Anthrax lethal toxin blocks  
3440 MAPK kinase-dependent IL-2 production in CD4 $^{+}$  T cells. *J Immunol* 2005;174:4966-4971.
- 3441 167. Goodman JW, Nitecki DE. Immunochemical studies on the poly- $\gamma$ -D-  
3442 glutamyl capsule of Bacillus anthracis. I. Characterization of the polypeptide and of the  
3443 specificity of its reaction with rabbit antisera. *Biochemistry* 1966;5:657-665.

- 3444 168. Uchida I, Makino S, Sasakawa C, *et al.*. Identification of a novel gene, dep,  
3445 associated with depolymerization of the capsular polymer in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Microbiol*  
3446 1993;9:487-496.
- 3447 169. Hoffmaster AR, Koehler TM. The anthrax toxin activator gene *atxA* is associated  
3448 with CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced non-toxin gene expression in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Infect Immun*  
3449 1997;65:3091-3099.
- 3450 170. Koehler TM, Dai Z, Kaufman-Yarbray M. Regulation of the *Bacillus anthracis*  
3451 protective antigen gene: CO<sub>2</sub> and a trans-acting element activate transcription from one of two  
3452 promoters. *J Bacteriol* 1994;176:586-595.
- 3453 171. Vietri NJ, Marrero R, Hoover TA, *et al.*. Identification and characterization of a  
3454 trans-activator involved in the regulation of encapsulation by *Bacillus anthracis*. *Gene*  
3455 1995;152:1-9.
- 3456 172. Jang J, Cho M, Chun JH, *et al.*. The poly-gamma-D-glutamic acid capsule of  
3457 *Bacillus anthracis* enhances lethal toxin activity. *Infect Immun* 2011;79:3846-3854.
- 3458 173. Ezzell JW, Welkos SL. The capsule of *Bacillus anthracis*, a review. *J Appl*  
3459 *Microbiol* 1999;87:250.
- 3460 174. Wu W, Mehta H, Chakrabarty K, *et al.*. Resistance of human alveolar  
3461 macrophages to *Bacillus anthracis* lethal toxin. *J Immunol* 2009;183:5799-5806.
- 3462 175. Turnbull PC. Anthrax vaccines: past, present and future. *Vaccine* 1991;9:533-539.
- 3463 176. Jang J, Cho M, Lee HR, *et al.*. Monoclonal antibody against the poly-gamma-D-  
3464 glutamic acid capsule of *Bacillus anthracis* protects mice from enhanced lethal toxin activity due  
3465 to capsule and anthrax spore challenge. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2013;1830:2804-2812.
- 3466 177. Lee DY, Chun JH, Ha HJ, *et al.*. Poly-gamma-d-glutamic acid and protective  
3467 antigen conjugate vaccines induce functional antibodies against the protective antigen and  
3468 capsule of *Bacillus anthracis* in guinea-pigs and rabbits. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol*  
3469 2009;57:165-172.
- 3470 178. Chabot DJ, Scorpio A, Tobery SA, *et al.*. Anthrax capsule vaccine protects  
3471 against experimental infection. *Vaccine* 2004;23:43-47.
- 3472 179. Mignot T, Mesnage S, Couture-Tosi E, *et al.*. Developmental switch of S-layer  
3473 protein synthesis in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Microbiol* 2002;43:1615-1627.
- 3474 180. Lambert EA, Sherry N, Popham DL. In vitro and in vivo analyses of the *Bacillus*  
3475 *anthracis* spore cortex lytic protein SleL. *Microbiology* 2012;158:1359-1368.

- 3476 181. Chitlaru T, Ariel N, Zvi A, *et al.*. Identification of chromosomally encoded  
3477 membranal polypeptides of *Bacillus anthracis* by a proteomic analysis: prevalence of proteins  
3478 containing S-layer homology domains. *Proteomics* 2004;4:677-691.
- 3479 182. Uchida M, Harada T, Enkhtuya J, *et al.*. Protective effect of *Bacillus anthracis*  
3480 surface protein EA1 against anthrax in mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2012;421:323-328.
- 3481 183. Bourgogne A, Drysdale M, Hilsenbeck SG, *et al.*. Global effects of virulence  
3482 gene regulators in a *Bacillus anthracis* strain with both virulence plasmids. *Infect Immun*  
3483 2003;71:2736-2743.
- 3484 184. Hoffmaster AR, Koehler TM. Control of virulence gene expression in *Bacillus*  
3485 *anthracis*. *J Appl Microbiol* 1999;87:279-281.
- 3486 185. Uchida I, Hornung JM, Thorne CB, *et al.*. Cloning and characterization of a gene  
3487 whose product is a trans-activator of anthrax toxin synthesis. *J Bacteriol* 1993;175:5329-5338.
- 3488 186. Brossier F, Mock M. Toxins of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Toxicon* 2001;39:1747-1755.
- 3489 187. Dai Z, Koehler TM. Regulation of anthrax toxin activator gene (*atxA*) expression  
3490 in *Bacillus anthracis*: temperature, not CO<sub>2</sub>/bicarbonate, affects *AtxA* synthesis. *Infect Immun*  
3491 1997;65:2576-2582.
- 3492 188. Dai Z, Sirard JC, Mock M, *et al.*. The *atxA* gene product activates transcription of  
3493 the anthrax toxin genes and is essential for virulence. *Mol Microbiol* 1995;16:1171-1181.
- 3494 189. Hammerstrom TG, Roh JH, Nikonowicz EP, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis* virulence  
3495 regulator *AtxA*: oligomeric state, function and CO(2) -signalling. *Mol Microbiol* 2011;82:634-  
3496 647.
- 3497 190. Tsvetanova B, Wilson AC, Bongiorno C, *et al.*. Opposing effects of histidine  
3498 phosphorylation regulate the *AtxA* virulence transcription factor in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol*  
3499 *Microbiol* 2007;63:644-655.
- 3500 191. Dale JL, Raynor MJ, Dwivedi P, *et al.*. cis-Acting elements that control  
3501 expression of the master virulence regulatory gene *atxA* in *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Bacteriol*  
3502 2012;194:4069-4079.
- 3503 192. Fouet A, Mock M. Regulatory networks for virulence and persistence of *Bacillus*  
3504 *anthracis*. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2006;9:160-166.
- 3505 193. Mignot T, Mock M, Fouet A. A plasmid-encoded regulator couples the synthesis  
3506 of toxins and surface structures in *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Microbiol* 2003;47:917-927.

- 3507 194. McKenzie AT, Pomerantsev AP, Sastalla I, *et al.*. Transcriptome analysis  
3508 identifies *Bacillus anthracis* genes that respond to CO<sub>2</sub> through an AtxA-dependent mechanism.  
3509 *BMC Genomics* 2014;15:229.
- 3510 195. Makino S, Sasakawa C, Uchida I, *et al.*. Cloning and CO<sub>2</sub>-dependent expression  
3511 of the genetic region for encapsulation from *Bacillus anthracis*. *Mol Microbiol* 1988;2:371-376.
- 3512 196. Saile E, Koehler TM. Control of anthrax toxin gene expression by the transition  
3513 state regulator *abrB*. *J Bacteriol* 2002;184:370-380.
- 3514 197. Harwood C. *Bacillus*. London: Plenum Press, 1989.
- 3515 198. Klichko VI, Miller J, Wu A, *et al.*. Anaerobic induction of *Bacillus anthracis*  
3516 hemolytic activity. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2003;303:855-862.
- 3517 199. Shannon JG, Ross CL, Koehler TM, *et al.*. Characterization of anthrolysin O, the  
3518 *Bacillus anthracis* cholesterol-dependent cytolysin. *Infect Immun* 2003;71:3183-3189.
- 3519 200. Mosser EM, Rest RF. The *Bacillus anthracis* cholesterol-dependent cytolysin,  
3520 Anthrolysin O, kills human neutrophils, monocytes and macrophages. *BMC Microbiol*  
3521 2006;6:56.
- 3522 201. Cendrowski S, MacArthur W, Hanna P. *Bacillus anthracis* requires siderophore  
3523 biosynthesis for growth in macrophages and mouse virulence. *Mol Microbiol* 2004;51:407-417.
- 3524 202. Lee JY, Janes BK, Passalacqua KD, *et al.*. Biosynthetic analysis of the  
3525 petrobactin siderophore pathway from *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Bacteriol* 2007;189:1698-1710.
- 3526 203. Xu Y, Liang X, Chen Y, *et al.*. Identification and biochemical characterization of  
3527 two novel collagen binding MSCRAMMs of *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Biol Chem* 2004;279:51760-  
3528 51768.
- 3529 204. Fisher N, Shetron-Rama L, Herring-Palmer A, *et al.*. The *dltABCD* operon of  
3530 *Bacillus anthracis* *sterne* is required for virulence and resistance to peptide, enzymatic, and  
3531 cellular mediators of innate immunity. *J Bacteriol* 2006;188:1301-1309.
- 3532 205. Walker JS, Klein F, Lincoln RE, *et al.*. A unique defense mechanism against  
3533 anthrax demonstrated in dwarf swine. *J Bacteriol* 1967;93:2031-2032.
- 3534 206. WHO. *Anthrax in Humans and Animals*. 4th ed, 2008.
- 3535 207. Blackburn JK, Van Ert M, Mullins JC, *et al.*. The necrophagous fly anthrax  
3536 transmission pathway: empirical and genetic evidence from wildlife epizootics. *Vector Borne*  
3537 *Zoonotic Dis* 2014;14:576-583.

- 3538            208.    Smith B. *Large Animal Internal Medicine*. 5th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier,  
3539 Mosby, 2014.
- 3540            209.    Redmond C, Hall GA, Turnbull PC, *et al.*. Experimentally assessed public health  
3541 risks associated with pigs from farms experiencing anthrax. *Vet Rec* 1997;141:244-247.
- 3542            210.    Green C. *Infectious Diseases of Dogs and Cats*. 4th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier,  
3543 Saunders, 2012.
- 3544            211.    Brachman P FA. *Vaccines*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia, Pa: WB Saunders Co. , 1999.
- 3545            212.    Summary of Notifiable Diseases MMWR Morbidity Mortality Weekly Report  
3546 1945-1994 In: CDC, ed, 1994;70-78.
- 3547            213.    Pile JC, Malone JD, Eitzen EM, *et al.*. Anthrax as a potential biological warfare  
3548 agent. *Arch Intern Med* 1998;158:429-434.
- 3549            214.    Mwenye KS, Siziya S, Peterson D. Factors associated with human anthrax  
3550 outbreak in the Chikupo and Ngandu villages of Murewa district in Mashonaland East Province,  
3551 Zimbabwe. *Cent Afr J Med* 1996;42:312-315.
- 3552            215.    Wenner KA, and J. R. Kenner. Anthrax. *Dermatol Clin* 2004;247 -256.
- 3553            216.    D. L. *Bacillus anthracis*. In: *eds. Principles and Practice of Infectious Disease*.  
3554 New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone Inc;, 1995.
- 3555            217.    Anthrax: WHO, 2008.
- 3556            218.    A. F. *Anthrax*. In: *Textbook of Military Medicine: Medical Aspects of Chemical*  
3557 *and Biological Warfare*. . Washington, DC:: Office of the Surgeon General, US Dept of the  
3558 Army, 1997.
- 3559            219.    Beatty ME, Ashford DA, Griffin PM, *et al.*. Gastrointestinal anthrax: review of  
3560 the literature. *Arch Intern Med* 2003;163:2527-2531.
- 3561            220.    Sirisanthana T, Navachareon N, Tharavichitkul P, *et al.*. Outbreak of oral-  
3562 oropharyngeal anthrax: an unusual manifestation of human infection with *Bacillus anthracis*. *Am*  
3563 *J Trop Med Hyg* 1984;33:144-150.
- 3564            221.    Dutz W, Saidi F, Kohout E. Gastric anthrax with massive ascites. *Gut*  
3565 1970;11:352-354.
- 3566            222.    Amidi S, Dutz W, Kohout E, *et al.*. Human anthrax in Iran. Report of 300 cases  
3567 and review of literature. *Tropenmed Parasitol* 1974;25:96-104.

- 3568            223.    Ndyabahinduka DG, Chu IH, Abdou AH, *et al.*. An outbreak of human  
3569    gastrointestinal anthrax. *Ann Ist Super Sanita* 1984;20:205-208.
- 3570            224.    Jena GP. Intestinal anthrax in man: a case report. *Cent Afr J Med* 1980;26:253-  
3571    254.
- 3572            225.    Abramova FA, Grinberg LM, Yampolskaya OV, *et al.*. Pathology of inhalational  
3573    anthrax in 42 cases from the Sverdlovsk outbreak of 1979. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*  
3574    1993;90:2291-2294.
- 3575            226.    Tekin A, Bulut N, Unal T. Acute abdomen due to anthrax. *Br J Surg* 1997;84:813.
- 3576            227.    Nalin DR, Sultana B, Sahunja R, *et al.*. Survival of a patient with intestinal  
3577    anthrax. *Am J Med* 1977;62:130-132.
- 3578            228.    Bhat P, Mohan DN, Srinivasa H. Intestinal anthrax with bacteriological  
3579    investigations. *J Infect Dis* 1985;152:1357-1358.
- 3580            229.    Hugh-Jones M. 1996-97 Global Anthrax Report. *J Appl Microbiol* 1999;87:189-  
3581    191.
- 3582            230.    Lakshmi N, Kumar AG. An epidemic of human anthrax--a study. *Indian J Pathol*  
3583    *Microbiol* 1992;35:1-4.
- 3584            231.    Turnbull PC, Bell RH, Saigawa K, *et al.*. Anthrax in wildlife in the Luangwa  
3585    Valley, Zambia. *Vet Rec* 1991;128:399-403.
- 3586            232.    Inhalation anthrax associated with dried animal hides--Pennsylvania and New  
3587    York City, 2006. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2006;55:280-282.
- 3588            233.    Franz DR, Jahrling PB, Friedlander AM, *et al.*. Clinical recognition and  
3589    management of patients exposed to biological warfare agents. *Jama* 1997;278:399-411.
- 3590            234.    Vessal K, Yeganehdoust J, Dutz W, *et al.*. Radiological changes in inhalation  
3591    anthrax a report of radiological and pathological correlation in two cases. *Clinical radiology*  
3592    1975;26:471-474.
- 3593            235.    Albrink WS, Brooks SM, Biron RE, *et al.*. Human inhalation anthrax. A report of  
3594    three fatal cases. *Am J Pathol* 1960;36:457-471.
- 3595            236.    Brachman PS. Inhalation anthrax. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1980;353:83-93.
- 3596            237.    Guidi-Rontani C, Weber-Levy M, Labruyere E, *et al.*. Germination of *Bacillus*  
3597    anthracis spores within alveolar macrophages. *Mol Microbiol* 1999;31:9-17.



- 3598 238. Guidi-Rontani C, Levy M, Ohayon H, *et al.*. Fate of germinated Bacillus anthracis  
3599 spores in primary murine macrophages. *Mol Microbiol* 2001;42:931-938.
- 3600 239. Dixon TC, Fadl AA, Koehler TM, *et al.*. Early Bacillus anthracis-macrophage  
3601 interactions: intracellular survival survival and escape. *Cell Microbiol* 2000;2:453-463.
- 3602 240. Pickering AK, Osorio M, Lee GM, *et al.*. Cytokine response to infection with  
3603 Bacillus anthracis spores. *Infect Immun* 2004;72:6382-6389.
- 3604 241. Dumetz F, Jouvion G, Khun H, *et al.*. Noninvasive imaging technologies reveal  
3605 edema toxin as a key virulence factor in anthrax. *Am J Pathol* 2011;178:2523-2535.
- 3606 242. Cleret A, Quesnel-Hellmann A, Vallon-Eberhard A, *et al.*. Lung dendritic cells  
3607 rapidly mediate anthrax spore entry through the pulmonary route. *J Immunol* 2007;178:7994-  
3608 8001.
- 3609 243. Russell BH, Vasan R, Keene DR, *et al.*. Potential dissemination of Bacillus  
3610 anthracis utilizing human lung epithelial cells. *Cell Microbiol* 2008;10:945-957.
- 3611 244. Bozue J, Moody KL, Cote CK, *et al.*. Bacillus anthracis spores of the bclA mutant  
3612 exhibit increased adherence to epithelial cells, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells but not to  
3613 macrophages. *Infect Immun* 2007;75:4498-4505.
- 3614 245. Sanz P, Teel LD, Alem F, *et al.*. Detection of Bacillus anthracis spore germination  
3615 in vivo by bioluminescence imaging. *Infect Immun* 2008;76:1036-1047.
- 3616 246. Zink SD, Burns DL. Importance of srtA and srtB for growth of Bacillus anthracis  
3617 in macrophages. *Infect Immun* 2005;73:5222-5228.
- 3618 247. Guidi-Rontani C. The alveolar macrophage: the Trojan horse of Bacillus  
3619 anthracis. *Trends Microbiol* 2002;10:405-409.
- 3620 248. Bozue J, Cote CK, Moody KL, *et al.*. Fully virulent Bacillus anthracis does not  
3621 require the immunodominant protein BclA for pathogenesis. *Infect Immun* 2007;75:508-511.
- 3622 249. Hasegawa M, Yang K, Hashimoto M, *et al.*. Differential release and distribution  
3623 of Nod1 and Nod2 immunostimulatory molecules among bacterial species and environments. *J*  
3624 *Biol Chem* 2006;281:29054-29063.
- 3625 250. Basu S, Kang TJ, Chen WH, *et al.*. Role of Bacillus anthracis spore structures in  
3626 macrophage cytokine responses. *Infect Immun* 2007;75:2351-2358.
- 3627 251. Welkos SL, Keener TJ, Gibbs PH. Differences in susceptibility of inbred mice to  
3628 Bacillus anthracis. *Infect Immun* 1986;51:795-800.

- 3629            252.    Kassam A, Der SD, Mogridge J. Differentiation of human monocytic cell lines  
3630            confers susceptibility to Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin. *Cell Microbiol* 2005;7:281-292.
- 3631            253.    Ruthel G, Ribot WJ, Bavari S, *et al.*. Time-lapse confocal imaging of  
3632            development of Bacillus anthracis in macrophages. *J Infect Dis* 2004;189:1313-1316.
- 3633            254.    Cote CK, Rossi CA, Kang AS, *et al.*. The detection of protective antigen (PA)  
3634            associated with spores of Bacillus anthracis and the effects of anti-PA antibodies on spore  
3635            germination and macrophage interactions. *Microb Pathog* 2005;38:209-225.
- 3636            255.    Tournier JN, Quesnel-Hellmann A, Cleret A, *et al.*. Contribution of toxins to the  
3637            pathogenesis of inhalational anthrax. *Cell Microbiol* 2007;9:555-565.
- 3638            256.    Bergman NH, Passalacqua KD, Gaspard R, *et al.*. Murine macrophage  
3639            transcriptional responses to Bacillus anthracis infection and intoxication. *Infect Immun*  
3640            2005;73:1069-1080.
- 3641            257.    Brittingham KC, Ruthel G, Panchal RG, *et al.*. Dendritic cells endocytose  
3642            Bacillus anthracis spores: implications for anthrax pathogenesis. *J Immunol* 2005;174:5545-  
3643            5552.
- 3644            258.    Agrawal A, Lingappa J, Leppla SH, *et al.*. Impairment of dendritic cells and  
3645            adaptive immunity by anthrax lethal toxin. *Nature* 2003;424:329-334.
- 3646            259.    Gold JA, Hoshino Y, Hoshino S, *et al.*. Exogenous gamma and alpha/beta  
3647            interferon rescues human macrophages from cell death induced by Bacillus anthracis. *Infect*  
3648            *Immun* 2004;72:1291-1297.
- 3649            260.    Gimenez AP, Wu YZ, Paya M, *et al.*. High bactericidal efficiency of type iia  
3650            phospholipase A2 against Bacillus anthracis and inhibition of its secretion by the lethal toxin. *J*  
3651            *Immunol* 2004;173:521-530.
- 3652            261.    Batty S, Chow EM, Kassam A, *et al.*. Inhibition of mitogen-activated protein  
3653            kinase signalling by Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin causes destabilization of interleukin-8 mRNA.  
3654            *Cell Microbiol* 2006;8:130-138.
- 3655            262.    Paccani SR, Tonello F, Ghittoni R, *et al.*. Anthrax toxins suppress T lymphocyte  
3656            activation by disrupting antigen receptor signaling. *J Exp Med* 2005;201:325-331.
- 3657            263.    Starnbach MN, Collier RJ. Anthrax delivers a lethal blow to host immunity. *Nat*  
3658            *Med* 2003;9:996-997.
- 3659            264.    Duverger A, Jackson RJ, van Ginkel FW, *et al.*. Bacillus anthracis edema toxin  
3660            acts as an adjuvant for mucosal immune responses to nasally administered vaccine antigens. *J*  
3661            *Immunol* 2006;176:1776-1783.

- 3662            265. Salles, II, Tucker AE, Voth DE, *et al.*. Toxin-induced resistance in *Bacillus*  
3663 anthracis lethal toxin-treated macrophages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2003;100:12426-12431.
- 3664            266. Kirby JE. Anthrax lethal toxin induces human endothelial cell apoptosis. *Infect*  
3665 *Immun* 2004;72:430-439.
- 3666            267. Warfel JM, Steele AD, D'Agnillo F. Anthrax lethal toxin induces endothelial  
3667 barrier dysfunction. *Am J Pathol* 2005;166:1871-1881.
- 3668            268. Gozes Y, Moayeri M, Wiggins JF, *et al.*. Anthrax lethal toxin induces ketotifen-  
3669 sensitive intradermal vascular leakage in certain inbred mice. *Infect Immun* 2006;74:1266-1272.
- 3670            269. Alam S, Gupta M, Bhatnagar R. Inhibition of platelet aggregation by anthrax  
3671 edema toxin. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006;339:107-114.
- 3672            270. Wu AG, Alibek D, Li YL, *et al.*. Anthrax toxin induces hemolysis: an indirect  
3673 effect through polymorphonuclear cells. *J Infect Dis* 2003;188:1138-1141.
- 3674            271. Kau JH, Sun DS, Tsai WJ, *et al.*. Antiplatelet activities of anthrax lethal toxin are  
3675 associated with suppressed p42/44 and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways in the  
3676 platelets. *J Infect Dis* 2005;192:1465-1474.
- 3677            272. Inglesby TV, O'Toole T, Henderson DA, *et al.*. Anthrax as a biological weapon,  
3678 2002: updated recommendations for management. *Jama* 2002;287:2236-2252.
- 3679            273. Odendaal MW, Pieterse PM, de Vos V, *et al.*. The antibiotic sensitivity patterns  
3680 of *Bacillus anthracis* isolated from the Kruger National Park. *Onderstepoort J Vet Res*  
3681 1991;58:17-19.
- 3682            274. Bhatnagar R, Friedlander AM. Protein synthesis is required for expression of  
3683 anthrax lethal toxin cytotoxicity. *Infect Immun* 1994;62:2958-2962.
- 3684            275. Spreer A, von Ruden C, Mitchell TJ, *et al.*. Influence of subinhibitory  
3685 concentrations of protein-synthesis-inhibiting antibiotics on production and release of the  
3686 pneumococcal virulence factor pneumolysin in vitro. *Chemotherapy* 2007;53:327-331.
- 3687            276. Brook I, Germana A, Giraldo DE, *et al.*. Clindamycin and quinolone therapy for  
3688 *Bacillus anthracis* Sterne infection in 60Co-gamma-photon-irradiated and sham-irradiated mice.  
3689 *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2005;56:1074-1080.
- 3690            277. Stepanov AV, Marinin LI, Pomerantsev AP, *et al.*. Development of novel  
3691 vaccines against anthrax in man. *J Biotechnol* 1996;44:155-160.
- 3692            278. O'Toole T. The problem of biological weapons: next steps for the nation. *Public*  
3693 *Health Rep* 2001;116 Suppl 2:108-111.

- 3694 279. Athamna A, Athamna M, Abu-Rashed N, *et al.*. Selection of *Bacillus anthracis*  
3695 isolates resistant to antibiotics. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2004;54:424-428.
- 3696 280. Lincoln RE, Klein F, Walker JS, *et al.*. SUCCESSFUL TREATMENT OF  
3697 RHESUS MONKEYS FOR SEPTICEMIA ANTHRAX. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*  
3698 (*Bethesda*) 1964;10:759-763.
- 3699 281. Athamna A, Athamna M, Medlej B, *et al.*. In vitro post-antibiotic effect of  
3700 fluoroquinolones, macrolides, beta-lactams, tetracyclines, vancomycin, clindamycin, linezolid,  
3701 chloramphenicol, quinupristin/dalfopristin and rifampicin on *Bacillus anthracis*. *J Antimicrob*  
3702 *Chemother* 2004;53:609-615.
- 3703 282. Sejvar JJ, Tenover FC, Stephens DS. Management of anthrax meningitis. *Lancet*  
3704 *Infect Dis* 2005;5:287-295.
- 3705 283. Gold H. Anthrax; a report of one hundred seventeen cases. *AMA Arch Intern Med*  
3706 1955;96:387-396.
- 3707 284. Lincoln RE, Walker JS, Klein F, *et al.*. Value of field data for extrapolation in  
3708 anthrax. *Fed Proc* 1967;26:1558-1562.
- 3709 285. Barnes JM. Penicillin and B-anthraxis. *J Pathol Bacteriol* 1947;59:113-125.
- 3710 286. Meaney-Delman D, Rasmussen SA, Beigi RH, *et al.*. Prophylaxis and treatment  
3711 of anthrax in pregnant women. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013;122:885-900.
- 3712 287. Brook I. The prophylaxis and treatment of anthrax. *Int J Antimicrob Agents*  
3713 2002;20:320-325.
- 3714 288. Bell DM, Kozarsky PE, Stephens DS. Clinical issues in the prophylaxis,  
3715 diagnosis, and treatment of anthrax. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002;8:222-225.
- 3716 289. Levy LM, Baker N, Meyer MP, *et al.*. Anthrax meningitis in Zimbabwe. *Cent Afr*  
3717 *J Med* 1981;27:101-104.
- 3718 290. George S, Mathai D, Balraj V, *et al.*. An outbreak of anthrax  
3719 meningoencephalitis. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 1994;88:206-207.
- 3720 291. Kanungo R, Kumar A, Bhattacharya S, *et al.*. Problem of timely diagnosis in  
3721 anthrax meningitis. *J Assoc Physicians India* 2002;50:913-915.
- 3722 292. Rasko DA, Worsham PL, Abshire TG, *et al.*. *Bacillus anthracis* comparative  
3723 genome analysis in support of the Amerithrax investigation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*  
3724 2011;108:5027-5032.

- 3725           293.   Update: Investigation of bioterrorism-related anthrax and interim guidelines for  
3726 exposure management and antimicrobial therapy, October 2001. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*  
3727 2001;50:909-919.
- 3728           294.   Day J, Friedman A, Schlesinger LS. Modeling the host response to inhalation  
3729 anthrax. *J Theor Biol* 2011;276:199-208.
- 3730           295.   Altboum Z, Gozes Y, Barnea A, *et al.*. Postexposure prophylaxis against anthrax:  
3731 evaluation of various treatment regimens in intranasally infected guinea pigs. *Infect Immun*  
3732 2002;70:6231-6241.
- 3733           296.   Sansone JM, Wilsman NJ, Leiferman EM, *et al.*. The effect of fluoroquinolone  
3734 antibiotics on growing cartilage in the lamb model. *J Pediatr Orthop* 2009;29:189-195.
- 3735           297.   Benavides S, Nahata MC. Anthrax: safe treatment for children. *Ann*  
3736 *Pharmacother* 2002;36:334-337.
- 3737           298.   Ellingson HV, Bookwalter HL, Howe C. Cutaneous anthrax; report of twenty-five  
3738 cases. *J Am Med Assoc* 1946;131:1105-1108.
- 3739           299.   al. KWe. A clinical and epidemiological  
3740 study of 621 patients with anthrax in western  
3741 Zimbabwe. . *Salisbury Medical Bulletin* 1990;68:34-38.
- 3742           300.   Seboxa T, Goldhagen J. Anthrax in Ethiopia. *Trop Geogr Med* 1989;41:108-112.
- 3743           301.   Bresnitz EA. Lessons learned from the CDC's post-exposure prophylaxis program  
3744 following the anthrax attacks of 2001. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf* 2005;14:389-391.
- 3745           302.   Williams JL, Noviello SS, Griffith KS, *et al.*. Anthrax postexposure prophylaxis  
3746 in postal workers, Connecticut, 2001. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002;8:1133-1137.
- 3747           303.   Shepard CW, Soriano-Gabarro M, Zell ER, *et al.*. Antimicrobial postexposure  
3748 prophylaxis for anthrax: adverse events and adherence. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002;8:1124-1132.
- 3749           304.   Sweeney DA, Cui X, Solomon SB, *et al.*. Anthrax lethal and edema toxins  
3750 produce different patterns of cardiovascular and renal dysfunction and synergistically decrease  
3751 survival in canines. *J Infect Dis* 2010;202:1885-1896.
- 3752           305.   Sherer K, Li Y, Cui X, *et al.*. Fluid support worsens outcome and negates the  
3753 benefit of protective antigen-directed monoclonal antibody in a lethal toxin-infused rat *Bacillus*  
3754 anthracis shock model. *Crit Care Med* 2007;35:1560-1567.

- 3755 306. Li Y, Cui X, Su J, *et al.*. Norepinephrine increases blood pressure but not survival  
3756 with anthrax lethal toxin in rats. *Crit Care Med* 2009;37:1348-1354.
- 3757 307. Jernigan JA, Stephens DS, Ashford DA, *et al.*. Bioterrorism-related inhalational  
3758 anthrax: the first 10 cases reported in the United States. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2001;7:933-944.
- 3759 308. Moayeri M, Webster JI, Wiggins JF, *et al.*. Endocrine perturbation increases  
3760 susceptibility of mice to anthrax lethal toxin. *Infect Immun* 2005;73:4238-4244.
- 3761 309. Smith H, Keppie J. Observations on experimental anthrax; demonstration of a  
3762 specific lethal factor produced in vivo by *Bacillus anthracis*. *Nature* 1954;173:869-870.
- 3763 310. Holty JE, Bravata DM, Liu H, *et al.*. Systematic review: a century of inhalational  
3764 anthrax cases from 1900 to 2005. *Ann Intern Med* 2006;144:270-280.
- 3765 311. Little SF, Ivins BE, Fellows PF, *et al.*. Passive protection by polyclonal antibodies  
3766 against *Bacillus anthracis* infection in guinea pigs. *Infect Immun* 1997;65:5171-5175.
- 3767 312. Kumar P, Ahuja N, Bhatnagar R. Anthrax edema toxin requires influx of calcium  
3768 for inducing cyclic AMP toxicity in target cells. *Infect Immun* 2002;70:4997-5007.
- 3769 313. Shin S, Hur GH, Kim YB, *et al.*. Intracellular calcium antagonist protects cultured  
3770 peritoneal macrophages against anthrax lethal toxin-induced cytotoxicity. *Cell Biol Toxicol*  
3771 2000;16:137-144.
- 3772 314. Shin S, Kim YB, Hur GH. Involvement of phospholipase A2 activation in anthrax  
3773 lethal toxin-induced cytotoxicity. *Cell Biol Toxicol* 1999;15:19-29.
- 3774 315. Goldman ME, Cregar L, Nguyen D, *et al.*. Cationic polyamines inhibit anthrax  
3775 lethal factor protease. *BMC Pharmacol* 2006;6:8.
- 3776 316. Thomas M, Castignetti D. Examination of anthrax lethal factor inhibition by  
3777 siderophores, small hydroxamates, and protamine. *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 2009;42:284-289.
- 3778 317. Shen Y, Zhukovskaya NL, Zimmer MI, *et al.*. Selective inhibition of anthrax  
3779 edema factor by adefovir, a drug for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S*  
3780 *A* 2004;101:3242-3247.
- 3781 318. deCathelineau AM, Bokoch GM. Inactivation of rho GTPases by statins  
3782 attenuates anthrax lethal toxin activity. *Infect Immun* 2009;77:348-359.
- 3783 319. Sanchez AM, Thomas D, Gillespie EJ, *et al.*. Amiodarone and bepridil inhibit  
3784 anthrax toxin entry into host cells. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2007;51:2403-2411.

- 3785            320.    Zhu PJ, Hobson JP, Southall N, *et al.*. Quantitative high-throughput screening  
3786 identifies inhibitors of anthrax-induced cell death. *Bioorg Med Chem* 2009;17:5139-5145.
- 3787            321.    Moayeri M, Wiggins JF, Lindeman RE, *et al.*. Cisplatin inhibition of anthrax  
3788 lethal toxin. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006;50:2658-2665.
- 3789            322.    Hanna PC, Kruskal BA, Ezekowitz RA, *et al.*. Role of macrophage oxidative  
3790 burst in the action of anthrax lethal toxin. *Mol Med* 1994;1:7-18.
- 3791            323.    Artenstein AW, Opal SM, Cristofaro P, *et al.*. Chloroquine enhances survival in  
3792 *Bacillus anthracis* intoxication. *J Infect Dis* 2004;190:1655-1660.
- 3793            324.    Hirsh MI, Cohen V. Chloroquine prevents T lymphocyte suppression induced by  
3794 anthrax lethal toxin. *J Infect Dis* 2006;194:1003-1007.
- 3795            325.    Komiyama T, Swanson JA, Fuller RS. Protection from anthrax toxin-mediated  
3796 killing of macrophages by the combined effects of furin inhibitors and chloroquine. *Antimicrob*  
3797 *Agents Chemother* 2005;49:3875-3882.
- 3798            326.    Welkos S, Friedlander A, Weeks S, *et al.*. In-vitro characterisation of the  
3799 phagocytosis and fate of anthrax spores in macrophages and the effects of anti-PA antibody. *J*  
3800 *Med Microbiol* 2002;51:821-831.
- 3801            327.    Kocer SS, Walker SG, Zerler B, *et al.*. Metalloproteinase inhibitors,  
3802 nonantimicrobial chemically modified tetracyclines, and ilomastat block *Bacillus anthracis* lethal  
3803 factor activity in viable cells. *Infect Immun* 2005;73:7548-7557.
- 3804            328.    Dell'Aica I, Dona M, Tonello F, *et al.*. Potent inhibitors of anthrax lethal factor  
3805 from green tea. *EMBO Rep* 2004;5:418-422.
- 3806            329.    Turk BE. Discovery and development of anthrax lethal factor metalloproteinase  
3807 inhibitors. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 2008;9:24-33.
- 3808            330.    Opal SM, Artenstein AW, Cristofaro PA, *et al.*. Inter-alpha-inhibitor proteins are  
3809 endogenous furin inhibitors and provide protection against experimental anthrax intoxication.  
3810 *Infect Immun* 2005;73:5101-5105.
- 3811            331.    Bost F, Diarra-Mehrpour M, Martin JP. Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor proteoglycan  
3812 family--a group of proteins binding and stabilizing the extracellular matrix. *Eur J Biochem*  
3813 1998;252:339-346.
- 3814            332.    Opal SM, Lim YP, Siryaporn E, *et al.*. Longitudinal studies of inter-alpha  
3815 inhibitor proteins in severely septic patients: a potential clinical marker and mediator of severe  
3816 sepsis. *Crit Care Med* 2007;35:387-392.

- 3817 333. Lim YP, Bendelja K, Opal SM, *et al.*. Correlation between mortality and the  
3818 levels of inter-alpha inhibitors in the plasma of patients with severe sepsis. *J Infect Dis*  
3819 2003;188:919-926.
- 3820 334. Zhang Y, Chen H, Li YM, *et al.*. Thymosin alpha1- and ulinastatin-based  
3821 immunomodulatory strategy for sepsis arising from intra-abdominal infection due to  
3822 carbapenem-resistant bacteria. *J Infect Dis* 2008;198:723-730.
- 3823 335. Opal SM, Lim YP, Cristofaro P, *et al.*. Inter-alpha inhibitor proteins: a novel  
3824 therapeutic strategy for experimental anthrax infection. *Shock* 2011;35:42-44.
- 3825 336. Artenstein AW, Opal SM. Proprotein convertases in health and disease. *N Engl J*  
3826 *Med* 2011;365:2507-2518.
- 3827 337. Jean F, Stella K, Thomas L, *et al.*. alpha1-Antitrypsin Portland, a bioengineered  
3828 serpin highly selective for furin: application as an antipathogenic agent. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S*  
3829 *A* 1998;95:7293-7298.
- 3830 338. Terra JK, Cote CK, France B, *et al.*. Cutting edge: resistance to Bacillus anthracis  
3831 infection mediated by a lethal toxin sensitive allele of Nalp1b/Nlrp1b. *J Immunol* 2010;184:17-  
3832 20.
- 3833 339. Sellman BR, Mourez M, Collier RJ. Dominant-negative mutants of a toxin  
3834 subunit: an approach to therapy of anthrax. *Science* 2001;292:695-697.
- 3835 340. Schuch R, Nelson D, Fischetti VA. A bacteriolytic agent that detects and kills  
3836 Bacillus anthracis. *Nature* 2002;418:884-889.
- 3837 341. Fischetti VA. Bacteriophage lysins as effective antibacterials. *Curr Opin*  
3838 *Microbiol* 2008;11:393-400.
- 3839 342. Kikkawa HS, Ueda T, Suzuki S, *et al.*. Characterization of the catalytic activity of  
3840 the gamma-phage lysin, PlyG, specific for Bacillus anthracis. *FEMS Microbiol Lett*  
3841 2008;286:236-240.
- 3842 343. Sainathrao S, Mohan KV, Atreya C. Gamma-phage lysin PlyG sequence-based  
3843 synthetic peptides coupled with Qdot-nanocrystals are useful for developing detection methods  
3844 for Bacillus anthracis by using its surrogates, B. anthracis-Sterne and B. cereus-4342. *BMC*  
3845 *Biotechnol* 2009;9:67.
- 3846 344. Asad S, Opal SM. Bench-to-bedside review: Quorum sensing and the role of cell-  
3847 to-cell communication during invasive bacterial infection. *Crit Care* 2008;12:236.
- 3848 345. Jones MB, Blaser MJ. Detection of a luxS-signaling molecule in Bacillus  
3849 anthracis. *Infect Immun* 2003;71:3914-3919.



3850            346. Jones MB, Jani R, Ren D, *et al.*. Inhibition of *Bacillus anthracis* growth and  
3851 virulence-gene expression by inhibitors of quorum-sensing. *J Infect Dis* 2005;191:1881-1888.

3852            347. Bozue J, Powell BS, Cote CK, *et al.*. Disrupting the luxS quorum sensing gene  
3853 does not significantly affect *Bacillus anthracis* virulence in mice or guinea pigs. *Virulence*  
3854 2012;3:504-509.

3855            348. Fang H, Xu L, Chen TY, *et al.*. Anthrax lethal toxin has direct and potent  
3856 inhibitory effects on B cell proliferation and immunoglobulin production. *J Immunol*  
3857 2006;176:6155-6161.

3858            349. Mourez M, Kane RS, Mogridge J, *et al.*. Designing a polyvalent inhibitor of  
3859 anthrax toxin. *Nat Biotechnol* 2001;19:958-961.

3860            350. Akoachere M, Squires RC, Nour AM, *et al.*. Identification of an in vivo inhibitor  
3861 of *Bacillus anthracis* spore germination. *J Biol Chem* 2007;282:12112-12118.

3862            351. Wang W, Mulakala C, Ward SC, *et al.*. Retrocyclins kill bacilli and germinating  
3863 spores of *Bacillus anthracis* and inactivate anthrax lethal toxin. *J Biol Chem* 2006;281:32755-  
3864 32764.

3865            352. Crawford MA, Burdick MD, Glomski IJ, *et al.*. Interferon-inducible CXC  
3866 chemokines directly contribute to host defense against inhalational anthrax in a murine model of  
3867 infection. *PLoS Pathog* 2010;6:e1001199.

3868            353. Crawford MA, Lowe DE, Fisher DJ, *et al.*. Identification of the bacterial protein  
3869 FtsX as a unique target of chemokine-mediated antimicrobial activity against *Bacillus anthracis*.  
3870 *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2011;108:17159-17164.

3871            354. Newman ZL, Sirianni N, Mawhinney C, *et al.*. Aurano-fin protects against anthrax  
3872 lethal toxin-induced activation of the Nlrp1b inflammasome. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother*  
3873 2011;55:1028-1035.

3874            355. Dinarello CA. Interleukin-1 in the pathogenesis and treatment of inflammatory  
3875 diseases. *Blood* 2011;117:3720-3732.

3876            356. Winau F, Winau R. Emil von Behring and serum therapy. *Microbes Infect*  
3877 2002;4:185-188.

3878            357. Mitchell W. CASE OF CUTANEOUS ANTHRAX TREATED WITHOUT  
3879 EXCISION WITH SCLAVO'S ANTI-ANTHRAX SERUM: RECOVERY. *Br Med J*  
3880 1905;2:118-120.

- 3881            358. Schiff RI, Rudd C. Alterations in the half-life and clearance of IgG during therapy  
3882 with intravenous gamma-globulin in 16 patients with severe primary humoral  
3883 immunodeficiency. *J Clin Immunol* 1986;6:256-264.
- 3884            359. Mankarious S, Lee M, Fischer S, *et al.*. The half-lives of IgG subclasses and  
3885 specific antibodies in patients with primary immunodeficiency who are receiving intravenously  
3886 administered immunoglobulin. *J Lab Clin Med* 1988;112:634-640.
- 3887            360. Chitlaru T, Altboum Z, Reuveny S, *et al.*. Progress and novel strategies in vaccine  
3888 development and treatment of anthrax. *Immunol Rev* 2011;239:221-236.
- 3889            361. Little SF, Ivins BE, Fellows PF, *et al.*. Defining a serological correlate of  
3890 protection in rabbits for a recombinant anthrax vaccine. *Vaccine* 2004;22:422-430.
- 3891            362. Mabry R, Rani M, Geiger R, *et al.*. Passive protection against anthrax by using a  
3892 high-affinity antitoxin antibody fragment lacking an Fc region. *Infect Immun* 2005;73:8362-  
3893 8368.
- 3894            363. Pittman PR, Cavicchia MA, Kingsbury JL, *et al.*. Anthrax vaccine adsorbed:  
3895 further evidence supporting continuing the vaccination series rather than restarting the series  
3896 when doses are delayed. *Vaccine* 2014;32:5131-5139.
- 3897            364. Williamson ED, Hodgson I, Walker NJ, *et al.*. Immunogenicity of recombinant  
3898 protective antigen and efficacy against aerosol challenge with anthrax. *Infect Immun*  
3899 2005;73:5978-5987.
- 3900            365. Keitel WA. Recombinant protective antigen 102 (rPA102): profile of a second-  
3901 generation anthrax vaccine. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2006;5:417-430.
- 3902            366. Campbell JD, Clement KH, Wasserman SS, *et al.*. Safety, reactogenicity and  
3903 immunogenicity of a recombinant protective antigen anthrax vaccine given to healthy adults.  
3904 *Hum Vaccin* 2007;3:205-211.
- 3905            367. Ionin B, Hopkins RJ, Pleune B, *et al.*. Evaluation of immunogenicity and efficacy  
3906 of anthrax vaccine adsorbed for postexposure prophylaxis. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2013;20:1016-  
3907 1026.
- 3908            368. Klinman DM, Yamamoto M, Tross D, *et al.*. Anthrax prevention and treatment:  
3909 utility of therapy combining antibiotic plus vaccine. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2009;9:1477-1486.
- 3910            369. Splino M, Patocka J. Prophylaxis against anthrax. *Acta Medica (Hradec Kralove)*  
3911 2002;45:85-88.
- 3912            370. Klinman DM, Tross D. A single-dose combination therapy that both prevents and  
3913 treats anthrax infection. *Vaccine* 2009;27:1811-1815.

- 3914 371. Chen L, Schiffer JM, Dalton S, *et al.*. Comprehensive analysis and selection of  
3915 anthrax vaccine adsorbed immune correlates of protection in rhesus macaques. *Clin Vaccine*  
3916 *Immunol* 2014;21:1512-1520.
- 3917 372. Vietri NJ, Purcell BK, Lawler JV, *et al.*. Short-course postexposure antibiotic  
3918 prophylaxis combined with vaccination protects against experimental inhalational anthrax. *Proc*  
3919 *Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2006;103:7813-7816.
- 3920 373. Wright JG, Quinn CP, Shadomy S, *et al.*. Use of anthrax vaccine in the United  
3921 States: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2009.  
3922 *MMWR Recomm Rep* 2010;59:1-30.
- 3923 374. Friedlander AM, Welkos SL, Pitt ML, *et al.*. Postexposure prophylaxis against  
3924 experimental inhalation anthrax. *J Infect Dis* 1993;167:1239-1243.
- 3925 375. Doganay M, Aydin N. Antimicrobial susceptibility of *Bacillus anthracis*. *Scand J*  
3926 *Infect Dis* 1991;23:333-335.
- 3927 376. Turnbull PC, Sirianni NM, LeBron CI, *et al.*. MICs of selected antibiotics for  
3928 *Bacillus anthracis*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus thuringiensis*, and *Bacillus mycoides* from a range of  
3929 clinical and environmental sources as determined by the Etest. *J Clin Microbiol* 2004;42:3626-  
3930 3634.
- 3931 377. Price LB, Vogler A, Pearson T, *et al.*. In vitro selection and characterization of  
3932 *Bacillus anthracis* mutants with high-level resistance to ciprofloxacin. *Antimicrob Agents*  
3933 *Chemother* 2003;47:2362-2365.
- 3934 378. Karginov VA, Robinson TM, Riemenschneider J, *et al.*. Treatment of anthrax  
3935 infection with combination of ciprofloxacin and antibodies to protective antigen of *Bacillus*  
3936 *anthracis*. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2004;40:71-74.
- 3937 379. Kobiler D, Gozes Y, Rosenberg H, *et al.*. Efficiency of protection of guinea pigs  
3938 against infection with *Bacillus anthracis* spores by passive immunization. *Infect Immun*  
3939 2002;70:544-560.
- 3940 380. Staats HF, Alam SM, Searce RM, *et al.*. In vitro and in vivo characterization of  
3941 anthrax anti-protective antigen and anti-lethal factor monoclonal antibodies after passive transfer  
3942 in a mouse lethal toxin challenge model to define correlates of immunity. *Infect Immun*  
3943 2007;75:5443-5452.
- 3944 381. Beedham RJ, Turnbull PC, Williamson ED. Passive transfer of protection against  
3945 *Bacillus anthracis* infection in a murine model. *Vaccine* 2001;19:4409-4416.

- 3946            382.    Biron B, Beck K, Dyer D, *et al.*. Efficacy of ETI-204 Monoclonal Antibody as an  
3947 Adjunct Therapy in a New Zealand White Rabbit Partial Survival Model for Inhalational  
3948 Anthrax. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2015.
- 3949            383.    Peterson JW, Comer JE, Baze WB, *et al.*. Human monoclonal antibody AVP-  
3950 21D9 to protective antigen reduces dissemination of the Bacillus anthracis Ames strain from the  
3951 lungs in a rabbit model. *Infect Immun* 2007;75:3414-3424.
- 3952            384.    Little SF, Leppla SH, Cora E. Production and characterization of monoclonal  
3953 antibodies to the protective antigen component of Bacillus anthracis toxin. *Infect Immun*  
3954 1988;56:1807-1813.
- 3955            385.    Little SF, Leppla SH, Friedlander AM. Production and characterization of  
3956 monoclonal antibodies against the lethal factor component of Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin.  
3957 *Infect Immun* 1990;58:1606-1613.
- 3958            386.    Brossier F, Levy M, Landier A, *et al.*. Functional analysis of Bacillus anthracis  
3959 protective antigen by using neutralizing monoclonal antibodies. *Infect Immun* 2004;72:6313-  
3960 6317.
- 3961            387.    Mohamed N, Li J, Ferreira CS, *et al.*. Enhancement of anthrax lethal toxin  
3962 cytotoxicity: a subset of monoclonal antibodies against protective antigen increases lethal toxin-  
3963 mediated killing of murine macrophages. *Infect Immun* 2004;72:3276-3283.
- 3964            388.    Wild MA, Xin H, Maruyama T, *et al.*. Human antibodies from immunized donors  
3965 are protective against anthrax toxin in vivo. *Nat Biotechnol* 2003;21:1305-1306.
- 3966            389.    Maynard JA, Maassen CB, Leppla SH, *et al.*. Protection against anthrax toxin by  
3967 recombinant antibody fragments correlates with antigen affinity. *Nat Biotechnol* 2002;20:597-  
3968 601.
- 3969            390.    Sawada-Hirai R, Jiang I, Wang F, *et al.*. Human anti-anthrax protective antigen  
3970 neutralizing monoclonal antibodies derived from donors vaccinated with anthrax vaccine  
3971 adsorbed. *J Immune Based Ther Vaccines* 2004;2:5.
- 3972            391.    Wang F, Ruther P, Jiang I, *et al.*. Human monoclonal antibodies that neutralize  
3973 anthrax toxin by inhibiting heptamer assembly. *Hum Antibodies* 2004;13:105-110.
- 3974            392.    Peterson JW, Comer JE, Noffsinger DM, *et al.*. Human monoclonal anti-  
3975 protective antigen antibody completely protects rabbits and is synergistic with ciprofloxacin in  
3976 protecting mice and guinea pigs against inhalation anthrax. *Infect Immun* 2006;74:1016-1024.
- 3977            393.    Vitale L, Blanset D, Lowy I, *et al.*. Prophylaxis and therapy of inhalational  
3978 anthrax by a novel monoclonal antibody to protective antigen that mimics vaccine-induced  
3979 immunity. *Infect Immun* 2006;74:5840-5847.

- 3980            394.    Lonberg N. Human antibodies from transgenic animals. *Nat Biotechnol*  
3981    2005;23:1117-1125.
- 3982            395.    Lim NK, Kim JH, Oh MS, *et al.*. An anthrax lethal factor-neutralizing  
3983    monoclonal antibody protects rats before and after challenge with anthrax toxin. *Infect Immun*  
3984    2005;73:6547-6551.
- 3985            396.    Zhao P, Liang X, Kalbfleisch J, *et al.*. Neutralizing monoclonal antibody against  
3986    anthrax lethal factor inhibits intoxication in a mouse model. *Hum Antibodies* 2003;12:129-135.
- 3987            397.    Albrecht MT, Li H, Williamson ED, *et al.*. Human monoclonal antibodies against  
3988    anthrax lethal factor and protective antigen act independently to protect against *Bacillus*  
3989    anthracis infection and enhance endogenous immunity to anthrax. *Infect Immun* 2007;75:5425-  
3990    5433.
- 3991            398.    Kozel TR, Thorkildson P, Brandt S, *et al.*. Protective and immunochemical  
3992    activities of monoclonal antibodies reactive with the *Bacillus anthracis* polypeptide capsule.  
3993    *Infect Immun* 2007;75:152-163.
- 3994            399.    Enkhtuya J, Kawamoto K, Kobayashi Y, *et al.*. Significant passive protective  
3995    effect against anthrax by antibody to *Bacillus anthracis* inactivated spores that lack two virulence  
3996    plasmids. *Microbiology* 2006;152:3103-3110.
- 3997            400.    Ziska SM, Schumacher J, Duran SH, *et al.*. Development of an automated  
3998    plasmapheresis procedure for the harvest of equine plasma in accordance with current good  
3999    manufacturing practice. *Am J Vet Res* 2012;73:762-769.
- 4000            401.    Leppla SH. Anthrax Lethal Factor. *Handbook of Proteolytic Enzymes*, 2013;1257-  
4001    1261.
- 4002            402.    Collier RJ. Membrane translocation by anthrax toxin. *Molecular Aspects of*  
4003    *Medicine* 2009;30:413-422.
- 4004            403.    Reuveny S WM, Adar YY, Kafri Y, Altaboum Z, Gozes Y, *et al.*. . Search for  
4005    correlates of protective immunity conferred by anthrax vaccine. *Infection and Immunity*  
4006    2001;69:2888-2893.
- 4007            404.    Pitt MLM LS, Ivins BE, Fellows P, Barth J, Hewetson J *et al.*. . In vitro correlates  
4008    of immunity in a rabbit model of inhalational anthrax. *Vaccine* 2001;19:4768-4773.
- 4009            405.    Beedham RJ TP, Williamson ED, . Passive transfer of protection against *Bacillus*  
4010    *anthracis* infection in a murine model. *Vaccine* 2001;19:4409-4416.

- 4011 406. Little SF IB, Fellows PF, Friedlander AM. Passive transfer of protection by  
4012 polyclonal antibodies against *Bacillus anthracis* infection in guinea pigs. *Infection and Immunity*  
4013 1997;65.
- 4014 407. Kobiler D GY, Rosenberg H, Marcus D, Reuveny S, Altboum Z. Efficiency of  
4015 protection of guinea pigs against infection with *Bacillus anthracis* spores by passive protection.  
4016 *infection and Immunity* 2002;70:540-550.
- 4017 408. Welkos S LS, Friedlander AM, Fritz D, Fellows P. . The role of anti-bodies to  
4018 *Bacillus anthracis* and anthrax toxin components in inhibiting the early stages of infection by  
4019 anthrax spores. *Microbiology* 2001;147:1677-1685.
- 4020 409. Little SF KG. Comparative efficacy of *Bacillus anthracis* live spore vaccine and  
4021 protective antigen vaccine against anthrax in guinea pigs. *Infection and Immunity* 1986;52:509-  
4022 512.
- 4023 410. Brachman P. *Vaccines, Chapter 31, Anthrax Vaccine*. 6th edition ed. London:  
4024 British Library, 2013.
- 4025 411. insert] ASVp. *Denver, CO: Colorado Serum Company; 2013*.
- 4026 412. Cartwright ME, McChesney AE, Jones RL. Vaccination-related anthrax in three  
4027 llamas. *J Am Vet Med Assoc* 1987;191:715-716.
- 4028 413. Ziska SM, Schumacher J, Duran SH, *et al.*. Effects of serial harvest of plasma on  
4029 total plasma protein and total immunoglobulin G concentrations in donor horses involved in a  
4030 plasmapheresis program. *Am J Vet Res* 2012;73:770-774.
- 4031 414. Feige K, Ehrat FB, Kastner SB, *et al.*. The effects of automated plasmapheresis on  
4032 clinical, haematological, biochemical and coagulation variables in horses. *Vet J* 2005;169:102-  
4033 107.
- 4034 415. Hewetson JF, Little SF, Ivins BE, *et al.*. An in vivo passive protection assay for  
4035 the evaluation of immunity in AVA-vaccinated individuals. *Vaccine* 2008;26:4262-4266.
- 4036 416. vor dem Esche U, Huber M, Zgaga-Griesz A, *et al.*. Passive vaccination with a  
4037 human monoclonal antibody: generation of antibodies and studies for efficacy in *Bacillus*  
4038 *anthracis* infections. *Immunobiology* 2011;216:847-853.
- 4039 417. Norrby-Teglund A, Basma H, Andersson J, *et al.*. Varying titers of neutralizing  
4040 antibodies to streptococcal superantigens in different preparations of normal polyspecific  
4041 immunoglobulin G: implications for therapeutic efficacy. *Clin Infect Dis* 1998;26:631-638.
- 4042 418. Farrugia A, Poulis P. Intravenous immunoglobulin: regulatory perspectives on use  
4043 and supply. *Transfus Med* 2001;11:63-74.

- 4044 419. Weiss S, Kobiler D, Levy H, *et al.*. Immunological correlates for protection  
4045 against intranasal challenge of Bacillus anthracis spores conferred by a protective antigen-based  
4046 vaccine in rabbits. *Infect Immun* 2006;74:394-398.
- 4047 420. Marcus H, Danieli R, Epstein E, *et al.*. Contribution of immunological memory to  
4048 protective immunity conferred by a Bacillus anthracis protective antigen-based vaccine. *Infect*  
4049 *Immun* 2004;72:3471-3477.
- 4050 421. Banks DJ, Barnajian M, Maldonado-Arocho FJ, *et al.*. Anthrax toxin receptor 2  
4051 mediates Bacillus anthracis killing of macrophages following spore challenge. *Cell Microbiol*  
4052 2005;7:1173-1185.
- 4053 422. . *Code of Federal Regulation Subpart C-anthrax vaccine adsorbed [chapter 1]*:  
4054 Food and Drug Administration, HHS, 1992;71-72.
- 4055 423. Food, Administration D. Guidance for industry: assay development for  
4056 immunogenicity testing of therapeutic proteins. *US Food and Drug Administration, Rockville,*  
4057 *MD* 2009.
- 4058 424. International Conference on Harmonisation of technical requirements for  
4059 registration of pharmaceuticals for human use. Validation of analytical procedures: methodology  
4060 Food and Drug Administration, HHS. *Fed Regist* 1996:1-8.
- 4061 425. Madore DV, Meade BD, Rubin F, *et al.*. Utilization of serologic assays to support  
4062 efficacy of vaccines in nonclinical and clinical trials: meeting at the crossroads. *Vaccine*  
4063 2010;28:4539-4547.
- 4064 426. Pombo M, Berthold I, Gingrich E, *et al.*. Validation of an anti-PA-ELISA for the  
4065 potency testing of anthrax vaccine in mice. *Biologicals* 2004;32:157-163.
- 4066 427. Semenova VA, Schiffer J, Steward-Clark E, *et al.*. Validation and long term  
4067 performance characteristics of a quantitative enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for  
4068 human anti-PA IgG. *J Immunol Methods* 2012;376:97-107.
- 4069 428. Pittman PR, Cavicchia MA, Kingsbury JL, *et al.*. Anthrax vaccine adsorbed:  
4070 Further evidence supporting continuing the vaccination series rather than restarting the series  
4071 when doses are delayed. *Vaccine* 2014.
- 4072 429. Friedlander AM, Pittman PR, Parker GW. Anthrax vaccine: Evidence for safety  
4073 and efficacy against inhalational anthrax. *Journal of the American Medical Association*  
4074 1999;282:2104-2106.
- 4075 430. Pittman PR, Gibbs PH, Cannon TL, *et al.*. Anthrax vaccine: Short-term safety  
4076 experience in humans. *Vaccine* 2001;20:972-978.

- 4077 431. Pittman PR, Norris SL, Barrera Oro JG, *et al.*. Patterns of antibody response in  
4078 humans to the anthrax vaccine adsorbed (AVA) primary (six-dose) series. *Vaccine*  
4079 2006;24:3654-3660.
- 4080 432. Singer DE, Schneerson R, Bautista CT, *et al.*. Serum IgG antibody response to the  
4081 protective antigen (PA) of *Bacillus anthracis* induced by anthrax vaccine adsorbed (AVA) among  
4082 U.S. military personnel. *Vaccine* 2008;26:869-873.
- 4083 433. Hanson JF, Taft SC, Weiss AA. Neutralizing antibodies and persistence of  
4084 immunity following anthrax vaccination. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2006;13:208-213.
- 4085 434. Ding G, Chen X, Zhu J, *et al.*. A human/murine chimeric fab antibody neutralizes  
4086 anthrax lethal toxin in vitro. *Clin Dev Immunol* 2013;2013:475809.
- 4087 435. Pohl MA, Rivera J, Nakouzi A, *et al.*. Combinations of monoclonal antibodies to  
4088 anthrax toxin manifest new properties in neutralization assays. *Infect Immun* 2013;81:1880-1888.
- 4089 436. Chen Z, Moayeri M, Crown D, *et al.*. Novel chimpanzee/human monoclonal  
4090 antibodies that neutralize anthrax lethal factor, and evidence for possible synergy with anti-  
4091 protective antigen antibody. *Infect Immun* 2009;77:3902-3908.
- 4092 437. In: Food and Drug Administration DoHaHS, ed. *Code of Federal Regulation*  
4093 *Subpart C-anthrax vaccine adsorbed [chapter 1]*. Washington, DC: Food and Drug  
4094 Administration, HHS, 1992;71-72.
- 4095 438. Select Agents and Toxins List In: USDA Ha, ed. *7 CFR part 331, 9 CFR part*  
4096 *121, 42 CFR part 73*. Washington, DC: APHIS, 2014.
- 4097 439. Taft SC, Weiss AA. Neutralizing activity of vaccine-induced antibodies to two  
4098 *Bacillus anthracis* toxin components, lethal factor and edema factor. *Clin Vaccine Immunol*  
4099 2008;15:71-75.
- 4100 440. Hambleton P, Carman JA, Melling J. Anthrax: the disease in relation to vaccines.  
4101 *Vaccine* 1984;2:125-132.
- 4102 441. Hanna PC, Kochi S, Collier RJ. Biochemical and physiological changes induced  
4103 by anthrax lethal toxin in J774 macrophage-like cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 1992;3:1269-1277.
- 4104 442. Hanna P. Anthrax pathogenesis and host response. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol*  
4105 1998;225:13-35.
- 4106 443. Little SF, Ivins BE. Molecular pathogenesis of *Bacillus anthracis* infection.  
4107 *Microbes Infect* 1999;1:131-139.



- 4108            444. Klimpel KR, Arora N, Leppa SH. Anthrax toxin lethal factor contains a zinc  
4109 metalloprotease consensus sequence which is required for lethal toxin activity. *Mol Microbiol*  
4110 1994;13:1093-1100.
- 4111            445. Duong S, Chiaraviglio L, Kirby JE. Histopathology in a murine model of anthrax.  
4112 *Int J Exp Pathol* 2006;87:131-137.
- 4113            446. Goossens PL. Animal models of human anthrax: the Quest for the Holy Grail.  
4114 *Mol Aspects Med* 2009;30:467-480.
- 4115            447. Oscherwitz J, Feldman D, Yu F, *et al.*. Epitope-focused peptide immunogens in  
4116 human use adjuvants protect rabbits from experimental inhalation anthrax. *Vaccine* 2015;33:430-  
4117 436.  
4118